Contents

1 Universal Algebra and Monads

Concerto Al Andalus

Marcel Khalifé

In this chapter, we cover most of the content on universal algebra and monads that we will need in the rest of the thesis. This material has appeared many times in the literature[0], but for completeness (and to be honest my own satisfaction) we take our time with it. In Chapter 3, we will follow the outline of the current chapter to generalize the definitions and results to sets equipped with a notion of distance. Thus, many choices in our notations and presentation are motivated by the needs of Chapter 3.

[0] [Wec12] and [Bau19] are two of my favorite references on universal algebra, and both [Rie17, Chapter 5] and [BW05, Chapter 3] are great references for monads (the latter calls them *triples*).

Outline: In §1.1, we define algebras, terms, and equations over a signature of finitary operation symbols. In §1.2, we explain how to construct the free algebra for a given signature and set of equations. In §1.3, we give the rules for equational logic to derive equations from other equations, and we show it sound and complete. In §1.4, we define monads and algebraic presentations for monads. We give examples all throughout, some small ones to build intuition, and some bigger ones that will be needed later.

1.1 Algebras and Equations

Definition 1 (Signature)**.** A **signature** is a set Σ whose elements, called **operation symbols**, each come with an **arity** $n \in \mathbb{N}$. We write $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ for a symbol op with arity n in Σ. With some abuse of notation, we also denote by Σ the functor $\Sigma : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ with the following action:[1]

$$\Sigma(A) := \coprod_{\mathsf{op}:n\in\Sigma} A^n \text{ on sets} \quad \text{and} \quad \Sigma(f) := \coprod_{\mathsf{op}:n\in\Sigma} f^n \text{ on functions.}$$

[1] The set $\Sigma(A)$ can be identified with the set containing $\mathsf{op}(a_1,\dots,a_n)$ for all $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $a_1,\dots,a_n \in A$. Then, the function $\Sigma(f)$ sends $\mathsf{op}(a_1,\dots,a_n)$ to $\mathsf{op}(f(a_1),\dots,f(a_n))$.

Definition 2 (Σ-algebra)**.** A Σ**-algebra** (or just algebra) is a set A equipped with functions $[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A : A^n \to A$ for every $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ called the **interpretation** of the symbol. We call A the **carrier** or **underlying** set, and when referring to an algebra, we will switch between using a single symbol $\mathbb{A}$[2] or the pair $(A, [\![-]\!]_A)$, where $[\![-]\!]_A : \Sigma(A) \to A$ is the function sending $\mathsf{op}(a_1,\dots,a_n)$ to $[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A(a_1,\dots,a_n)$ (it compactly describes the interpretations of all symbols).

[2] We will try to match the symbol for the algebra and the one for the underlying set only modifying the former with `mathbb`.

A **homomorphism** from $\mathbb{A}$ to $\mathbb{B}$ is a function $h : A \to B$ between the underlying sets of $\mathbb{A}$ and $\mathbb{B}$ that preserves the interpretation of all operation symbols in Σ, namely, for all $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $a_1, \ldots, a_n \in A$,[3]

$$h([\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A(a_1, \ldots, a_n)) = [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_B(h(a_1), \ldots, h(a_n)). \tag{1}$$

The identity maps $\mathrm{id}_A : A \to A$ and the composition of two homomorphisms are always homomorphisms, therefore we have a category whose objects are Σ-algebras and morphisms are Σ-algebra homomorphisms. We denote it by $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$.

This category is concrete over **Set** with the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{Set}$ which sends an algebra $\mathbb{A}$ to its carrier and a homomorphism to the underlying function between carriers.

[3] Equivalently, h makes the following square commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \Sigma(A) & \xrightarrow{\Sigma(f)} & \Sigma(B) \\ {\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_B} \\ A & \xrightarrow[f]{} & B \end{array} \tag{0}$$

This amounts to an equivalent and more concise definition of $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$: it is the category of algebras for the signature functor $\Sigma : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ [Awo10, Definition 10.8].

Remark 3. In the sequel, we will rarely distinguish between the homomorphism $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ and the underlying function $h : A \to B$. Although, we may write Uh for the latter, when disambiguation is necessary.

Examples 4. 1. Let $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$ be the signature containing a single operation symbol p with arity 0. A Σ-algebra is a set A equipped with an interpretation of p as a function $[\![\mathsf{p}]\!]_A : A^0 \to A$. Since A^0 is the singleton $\mathbf{1}$, $[\![\mathsf{p}]\!]_A$ is just a choice of element in A,[4] so the objects of $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ are pointed sets (sets with a distinguished element). Moreover, instantiating (1) for the symbol p, we find that a homomorphism from $\mathbb{A}$ to $\mathbb{B}$ is a function $h : A \to B$ sending the distinguished point of A to the distinguished point of B. We conclude that $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ is the category $\mathbf{Set}_*$ of pointed sets and functions preserving the points.

[4] For this reason, we often call 0-ary symbols **constants**.

2. Let $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{f} : 1\}$ be the signature containing a single unary operation symbol f. A Σ-algebra is a set A equipped with an interpretation of f as a function $[\![\mathsf{f}]\!]_A : A \to A$.

   For example, we have the Σ-algebra whose carrier is the set of integers $\mathbb{Z}$ and where f is interpreted as "adding 1", i.e. $[\![\mathsf{f}]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}}(k) = k + 1$. We also have the integers modulo 2, denoted by $\mathbb{Z}_2$, where $[\![\mathsf{f}]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}_2}(k) = k + 1 (\mathrm{mod}\ 2)$.

   The fact that a function $h : A \to B$ satisfies (1) for the symbol f is equivalent to the following commutative square.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{h} & B \\ {\scriptstyle [\![\mathsf{f}]\!]_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![\mathsf{f}]\!]_B} \\ A & \xrightarrow[h]{} & B \end{array}$$

   We conclude that $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ is the category whose objects are endofunctions and whose morphisms are commutative squares as above.[5] There is a homomorphism $\mathsf{is\_odd}$ from $\mathbb{Z}$ to $\mathbb{Z}_2$ that sends k to $k (\mathrm{mod}\ 2)$, that is, to 0 when it is even and to 1 when it is odd.

[5] For more categorical thinkers, we can also identify $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ with the functor category $[\mathbf{B}\mathbb{N}, \mathbf{Set}]$ from the delooping of the (additive) monoid $\mathbb{N}$ to the category of sets. Briefly, it is because a functor $\mathbf{B}\mathbb{N} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is completely determined by where it sends $1 \in \mathbb{N}$.

3. Let $\Sigma = \{+ : 2\}$ be the signature containing a single binary operation symbol. A Σ-algebra is a set A equipped with an interpretation $[\![+]\!]_A : A \times A \to A$. Such

a structure is often called a magma, and it is part of many more well-known algebraic structures like groups, rings, monoids, etc. While every group has an underlying Σ-algebra, not every Σ-algebra underlies a group since $[\![+]\!]_A$ is not required to be associative for example. The following definitions will allow us to talk about certain classes of Σ-algebras with some properties like associativity.

Definition 5 (Term)**.** Let Σ be a signature and A be a set. We denote with $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ the set of **Σ-terms** built syntactically from A and the operation symbols in Σ, i.e., the set inductively defined by

$$\frac{a \in A}{a \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma \qquad t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}{\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n) \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}.$$

We identify elements $a \in A$ with the corresponding terms $a \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, and we also identify (as outlined in Footnote 1) elements of $\Sigma(A)$ with terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ containing exactly one occurrence of an operation symbol.[6]

The assignment $A \mapsto \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ can be turned into a functor $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ by inductively defining, for any function $f : A \to B$, the function $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B$ as follows:[7]

$$\frac{a \in A}{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(a) = f(a)} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma \qquad t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)) = \mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_1), \dots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_n))}. \tag{2}$$

[6] Note that any constant $\mathsf{p} : 0 \in \Sigma$ belongs to all $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ by the second rule defining $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$.

[7] Note that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$ acts as identity on constants.

Proposition 6. *We defined a functor $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$, i.e. $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathrm{id}_A = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$ and $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma g \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$.*

Proof. We proceed by induction for both equations. For any $a \in A$, we have $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathrm{id}_A(a) = \mathrm{id}_A(a) = a$ and

$$\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f)(a) = (g \circ f)(a) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma g(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(a)).$$

For any $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)$, we have

$$\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathrm{id}_A(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)) \stackrel{(2)}{=} \mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathrm{id}_A(t_1), \dots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathrm{id}_A(t_n)) \stackrel{\text{I.H.}}{=} \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n),$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f)(t) &= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f)(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)) \\
&= \mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f)(t_1), \dots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(g \circ f)(t_n)) && \text{by (2)} \\
&= \mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma g(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_1)), \dots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma g(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_n))) && \text{I.H.} \\
&= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma g(\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_1), \dots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_n))) && \text{by (2)} \\
&= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma g \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)). && \text{by (2)}
\end{aligned}$$

□

Examples 7. 1. With $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$, a Σ-term over A is either an element of A or p. The functor $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is then naturally isomorphic to the functor sending A to $A + \mathbf{1}$.

2. With $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{f} : 1\}$, a Σ-term over A is either an element of A or a term $\mathsf{f}(\mathsf{f}(\cdots \mathsf{f}(a)))$ for some a and a finite number of iterations of f. The functor $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is then naturally isomorphic to the functor sending A to $\mathbb{N} \times A$.

3. With $\Sigma = \{+:2\}$, a Σ-term is either an element of A or any expression formed by "adding" elements of A together like $a+b$, $a+(b+c)$, $((a+a)+c)+(b+c)$ and so on when $a,b,c \in A$.[8]

As we said above, any element in A is a term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, we will denote this embedding with $\eta^\Sigma_A : A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, in particular, we will write $\eta^\Sigma_A(a)$ to emphasize that we are dealing with the term a and not the element of A. For instance, the base case of the definition of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$ in (2) becomes

$$\frac{a \in A}{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\eta^\Sigma_A(a)) = \eta^\Sigma_B(f(a))}\,.$$

This is exactly what it means for the family of maps $\eta^\Sigma_A : A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ to be natural in A,[9] in other words that $\eta^\Sigma : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Set}} \Rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is a natural transformation. We can mention now that it will be part of some additional structure on the functor $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ (a monad). The other part of that structure is a natural transformation $\mu^\Sigma : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \Rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$, that is more easily described using trees.

For an arbitrary signature Σ, we can think of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ as the set of rooted trees whose leaves are labelled with elements of A and whose nodes with n children are labelled with n-ary operation symbols in Σ. This makes the action of a function $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$ fairly straightforward: it applies f to the labels of all the leaves as depicted in Figure 1.1.

[8] We write $+$ infix as is very common. The parentheses are formal symbols to help delimit which $+$ is taken first. They are necessary because the interpretation of $+$ is not necessarily associative so $a+(b+c)$ and $(a+b)+c$ can be interpreted differently in some Σ-algebras.

[9] As a commutative square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ {\scriptstyle \eta^\Sigma_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \eta^\Sigma_B} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f]{} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \end{array} \qquad (3)$$

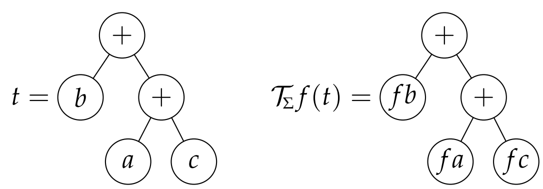


Figure 1.1: Applying $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$ to $b+(a+c)$ yields $f(b)+(f(a)+f(c))$.

This point of view is particularly helpful when describing the **flattening** of terms: there is a natural way to see a Σ-term over Σ-terms over A as a Σ-term over A. This is carried out by the map $\mu^\Sigma_A : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ which takes a tree T whose leaves are labelled with trees $T_1,\dots,T_n$ to the tree T where instead of the leaf labelled T_i, there is the root of T_i with all its children and their children and so on (we "glue" the tree T_i at the leaf labelled T_i). Figure 1.2 shows an example for $\Sigma = \{+:2\}$. More formally, μ^Σ_A is defined inductively by:

$$\mu^\Sigma_A(\eta^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}(t)) = t \text{ and } \mu^\Sigma_A(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)) = \mathsf{op}(\mu^\Sigma_A(t_1),\dots,\mu^\Sigma_A(t_n)). \qquad (4)$$

The use of the word "natural" above is not benign, μ^Σ is actually a natural transformation.

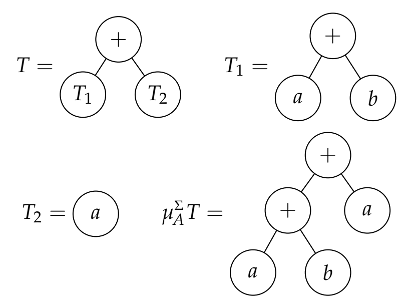


Figure 1.2: Flattening of a term

Proposition 8. *The family of maps $\mu^\Sigma_A : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ is natural in A.*

Proof. We need to prove that for any function $f : A \to B$, $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f \circ \mu^\Sigma_A = \mu^\Sigma_B \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$.[10] It makes sense intuitively, we should get the same result when we apply f to all the leaves before or after flattening. Formally, we use induction.

[10] As a commutative square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_B} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f]{} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \end{array} \qquad (5)$$

For the base case (i.e. terms in the image of $\eta^{\Sigma}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$), we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^{\Sigma}_B(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\eta^{\Sigma}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}(t))) &= \mu^{\Sigma}_B(\eta^{\Sigma}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma B}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t))) && \text{by (3)}\\ &= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t) && \text{by (4)}\\ &= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\eta^{\Sigma}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}(t))). && \text{by (4)}\end{aligned}$$

For the inductive step, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^{\Sigma}_B(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n))) &= \mu^{\Sigma}_B(\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_1),\dots,\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_n))) && \text{by (2)}\\ &= \mathsf{op}(\mu^{\Sigma}_B(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_1)),\dots,\mu^{\Sigma}_B(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t_n))) && \text{by (4)}\\ &= \mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(t_1)),\dots,\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(t_n))) && \text{I.H.}\\ &= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mathsf{op}(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(t_1),\dots,\mu^{\Sigma}_A(t_n))) && \text{by (2)}\\ &= \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n))) && \text{by (4)} \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

By definition, we have that $\mu^\Sigma \cdot \eta^\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is the identity transformation $\mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \Rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$.[11] In words, we say that seeing a term trivially as a term over terms then flattening it yields back the original term. Another similar property is that if we see all the variables in a term trivially as terms and flatten the resulting term over terms, the result is the original term. Formally:

[11] We write $\cdot$ to denote the vertical composition of natural transformations and juxtaposition (e.g. $F\phi$ or ϕF to denote the action of functors on natural transformations), namely, the component of $\mu^\Sigma \cdot \eta^\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ at A is $\mu^\Sigma_A \circ \eta^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$ which is $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$ by (4).

Lemma 9. *For any set A, $\mu^\Sigma_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \eta^\Sigma_A = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$, hence $\mu^\Sigma \cdot \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \eta^\Sigma = \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma}$.*

Proof. We proceed by induction. For the base case, we have

$$\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(\eta^{\Sigma}_A(a))) \overset{(3)}{=} \mu^{\Sigma}_A(\eta^{\Sigma}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}(\eta^{\Sigma}_A(a))) \overset{(4)}{=} \eta^{\Sigma}_A(a).$$

For the inductive step, if $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(t)) &= \mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)))\\ &= \mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(t_1),\dots,\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(t_n))) && \text{by (2)}\\ &= \mathsf{op}(\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(t_1)),\dots,\mu^{\Sigma}_A(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^{\Sigma}_A(t_n))) && \text{by (4)}\\ &= \mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n) = t && \text{I.H.} \quad \square\end{aligned}$$

Trees also make the depth of a term a visual concept. A term $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ is said to be of **depth** $d \in \mathbb{N}$ if the tree representing it has depth d.[12] We give an inductive definition:

[12] i.e. the longest path from the root to a leaf has d edges. In Figure 1.2, the depth of T and T_1 is 1, the depth of T_2 is 0 and the depth of $\mu^\Sigma_A T$ is 2.

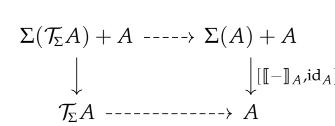
$$\mathrm{depth}(a) = 0 \text{ and } \mathrm{depth}(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)) = 1 + \max\{\mathrm{depth}(t_1),\dots,\mathrm{depth}(t_n)\}.$$

A term of depth 0 is a term in the image of η^Σ_A. A term of depth 1 is an element of $\Sigma(A)$ seen as a term (recall Footnote 1).

In any Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$, the interpretations of operation symbols give us an element of A for each element of $\Sigma(A)$. Using, the inductive definition of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, we can extend these interpretations to all terms: abusing notation, we define the function $[\![-]\!]_A : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A$ by[13]

$$\frac{a \in A}{[\![a]\!]_A = a} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma \qquad t_1,\dots,t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}{[\![\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)]\!]_A = [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![t_1]\!]_A,\dots,[\![t_n]\!]_A)}. \tag{6}$$

[13] For categorical thinkers, $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ is essentially defined to be the initial algebra for the endofunctor $\Sigma + A$: **Set** $\to$ **Set** sending X to $\Sigma(X) + A$. Any Σ-algebra $(A, [\![-]\!]_A)$ defines another algebra for that functor $[[\![-]\!]_A, \mathrm{id}_A] : \Sigma(A) + A \to A$. Then, the extension of $[\![-]\!]_A$ to terms is the unique algebra morphism drawn below.



This allows to further extend the interpretation $[\![-]\!]_A$ to all terms $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ over some set of variables X, provided we have an assignment of variables $\iota : X \to A$, by precomposing with $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota$. We denote this interpretation with $[\![-]\!]_A^\iota$:

$$[\![-]\!]_A^\iota = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \xrightarrow{[\![-]\!]_A} A. \tag{7}$$

Example 10. In the signature $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{f} : 1\}$ and over the variables $X = \{x\}$, we have (amongst others) the terms $t = \mathsf{ff}x$ and $s = \mathsf{fff}x$. If we compute the interpretation of t and s in $\mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{Z}_2$,[14] we obtain

$$[\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}}^\iota = \iota(x) + 2 \quad [\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}}^\iota = \iota(x) + 3 \quad [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}_2}^\iota = \iota(x) \quad [\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{Z}_2}^\iota = \iota(x) + 1(\text{mod } 2),$$

for any assignment $\iota : X \to \mathbb{Z}$ (resp. $\iota : X \to \mathbb{Z}_2$).

[14] Recall their Σ-algebra structure given in Examples 4.

By definition, a homomorphism preserves the interpretation of operation symbols. We can prove by induction that it also preserves the interpretation of arbitrary terms. Namely, if $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ is a homomorphism, then the following square commutes.[15]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \\ {\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_B} \\ A & \xrightarrow[h]{} & B \end{array} \tag{8}$$

[15] *Quick proof.* If $t = a \in A$, then both paths send it to $h(a)$. If $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} h([\![t]\!]_A) &= h([\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![t_1]\!]_A, \ldots, [\![t_n]\!]_A)) \\ &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_B(h([\![t_1]\!]_A), \ldots, h([\![t_n]\!]_A)) \\ &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_B([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(t_1)]\!]_B, \ldots, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(t_n)]\!]_B) \\ &= [\![\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(t_1), \ldots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(t_n))]\!]_B \\ &= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(t)]\!]. \end{aligned}$$

The converse is (almost trivially) true, if (8) commutes, then we can quickly see (0) commutes by embedding $\Sigma(A)$ into $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ and $\Sigma(B)$ into $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma B$. It follows readily that for all homomorphisms $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ and all assignments $\iota : X \to A$,

$$h \circ [\![-]\!]_A^\iota = [\![-]\!]_B^{h\circ\iota}. \tag{9}$$

Definition 11 (Equation)**.** An **equation** over a signature Σ is a triple comprising a set X of variables called the **context**, and a pair of terms $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. We write these as $X \vdash s = t$.

A Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$ **satisfies** an equation $X \vdash s = t$ if for any assignment of variables $\iota : X \to A$, $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$. We use ϕ and ψ to refer to equations, and we write $\mathbb{A} \vDash \phi$ when $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies ϕ. We also write $\mathbb{A} \vDash^\iota \phi$ when the equality $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$ holds for a particular assignment $\iota : X \to A$ and not necessarily for all assignments.

Example 12 (Associativity)**.** Let $\Sigma = \{+ : 2\}$, $X = \{x, y, z\}$, $s = x + (y + z)$ and $t = (x + y) + z$. The equation $\phi = X \vdash s = t$[16] asserts that the interpretation of $+$ is associative. Indeed, suppose $\mathbb{A} \vDash \phi$, we need to show that for any $a, b, c \in A$,

[16] Alternatively, we may write ϕ omitting brackets:

$$x, y, z \vdash x + (y + z) = (x + y) + z.$$

$$[\![+]\!]_A(a, [\![+]\!]_A(b, c)) = [\![+]\!]_A([\![+]\!]_A(a, b), c). \tag{10}$$

Observe that the L.H.S. is the interpretation of s under the assignment $\iota : X \to A$ sending x to a, y to b and z to c, that is, we have $[\![+]\!]_A(a, [\![+]\!]_A(b, c)) = [\![s]\!]_A^\iota$. Under the same assignment, the interpretation of t is the R.H.S. By hypothesis, $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$, so we conclude (10) holds.

Examples 13. Without going into that much details, there are many other simple examples of equations.

- $x, y \vdash x + y = y + x$ states that the binary operation $+$ is commutative.
- $x \vdash x + x = x$ states that the binary operation $+$ is idempotent.
- $x \vdash \mathsf{f}x = \mathsf{ff}x$ states that the unary operation f is idempotent.
- $x \vdash \mathsf{p} = x$ states that the constant p is equal to all elements in the algebra (this means the algebra is a singleton).
- $x, y \vdash x = y$ states that all elements in the algebra are equal (this means the algebra is either empty or a singleton).

Since interpretations are preserved by homomorphisms, it is expected that satisfaction is also preserved.

Lemma 14. *Let ϕ be a equation with context X. If $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ is a homomorphism and $\mathbb{A} \vDash^{\iota} \phi$ for an assignment $\iota : X \to A$, then $\mathbb{B} \vDash^{h \circ \iota} \phi$.*

Proof. Let ϕ be the equation $X \vdash s = t$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbb{A} \vDash^{\iota} \phi &\iff [\![s]\!]^{\iota}_A = [\![t]\!]^{\iota}_A && \text{definition of } \vDash \\
&\implies h([\![s]\!]^{\iota}_A) = h([\![t]\!]^{\iota}_A) && \\
&\implies [\![s]\!]^{h\circ\iota}_B = [\![t]\!]^{h\circ\iota}_B && \text{by (9)} \\
&\iff \mathbb{B} \vDash^{h\circ\iota} \phi. && \text{definition of } \vDash \qquad \square
\end{aligned}$$

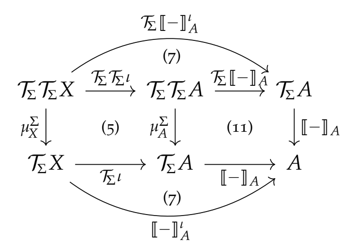
What is more surprising is that flattening interacts well with intepreting in the following sense.

Lemma 15. *For any Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$, the following square commutes.*[17]

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \\
{\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_A}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A} \\
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[{[\![-]\!]_A}]{} & A
\end{array} \tag{11}$$

[17] In words, given a term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, you obtain the same result if you interpret its flattening in $\mathbb{A}$, or if you interpret the term obtained by first interpreting all the "inner" terms.

This also generalizes to terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. Indeed, given an assignment, $\iota : X \to A$, we can either flatten a term and interpret it under ι, or we can interpret all the inner terms under ι, then interpret the result, as shown in (12).



(12)

Proof. We proceed by induction. For the base case, we have

$$[\![\mu^\Sigma_A(\eta^\Sigma_A(t))]\!]_A \overset{(4)}{=} [\![t]\!]_A \overset{(6)}{=} [\![\eta^\Sigma_A([\![t]\!]_A)]\!]_A \overset{(3)}{=} [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(\eta^\Sigma_A(t))]\!].$$

For the inductive step, if $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$, then

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![\mu^\Sigma_A(t)]\!]_A &= [\![\mathsf{op}(\mu^\Sigma_A(t_1), \ldots, \mu^\Sigma_A(t_n))]\!]_A && \text{by (4)} \\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A \left([\![\mu^\Sigma_A(t_1)]\!]_A, \ldots, [\![\mu^\Sigma_A(t_n)]\!]_A\right) && \text{by (6)} \\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A \left([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(t_1)]\!]_A, \ldots, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(t_n)]\!]_A\right) && \text{I.H.} \\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(t_1), \ldots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(t_n))]\!]_A && \text{by (6)} \\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n))]\!]_A && \text{by (2)} \\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma [\![-]\!]_A(t)]\!]_A. && \square
\end{aligned}$$

Remark 16. To see Lemma 15 in another way, notice that (11) looks a lot like (8), but the map on the left is not the interpretation on an algebra. Except it is! Indeed, we can give a trivial interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ on the set $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ by $[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}(t_1, \ldots, t_n) = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$. Then, we can verify by induction[18] that $[\![-]\!]_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ is equal to μ^Σ_A. We conclude that Lemma 15 says that for any algebra, $[\![-]\!]_A$ is a homomorphism from $(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A, [\![-]\!]_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A})$ to $\mathbb{A}$.

[18] Or we can compare (4) and (6) to see they become the same inductive definition in this instance.

In light of this remark, we mention two very similar results: given a set A, μ^Σ_A is a homomorphism between $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ and $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, and given function $f : A \to B$, $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f$ is a homomorphism between $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$ and $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma B$.

Lemma 17. *For any function $f : A \to B$, the following squares commute.*[19]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mu^\Sigma_A} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}} \downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_A} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[\mu^\Sigma_A]{} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \end{array} \qquad (13) \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_A} \downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_B} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f]{} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B \end{array} \qquad (14)$$

[19] *Proof.* We have already shown both these squares commute. Indeed, (13) is an instance of (11) where we identify μ^Σ_A with the interpretation $[\![-]\!]_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}$ as explained in Remark 16, and (14) is the naturality square (5).

Another consequence of (13) is that if you have a term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^n A$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, there are $(n-1)!$ ways to flatten it[20] by successively applying an instance of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^i \mu^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^j A}$ with different i and j (i.e. flattening at different levels inside the term), but all these ways lead to the same end result in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$. It is like when you have an expression built out of additions with possibly lots of nested bracketing, you can compute the sums in any order you want and it will give the same result. That property of addition is called associativity, and we will also say μ^Σ is associative.

[20] There is 1 way to flatten a term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^2 A$ to one in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$, and there are $n-1$ ways to flatten from $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^n A$ to $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^{(n-1)} A$. By induction, we find $(n-1)!$ possible combinations of flattening $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma^n A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$.

Given a set E of equations, we say $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies E and write $\mathbb{A} \vDash E$ if $\mathbb{A} \vDash \phi$ for all $\phi \in E$.[21] A (Σ, E)**-algebra** is a Σ-algebra that satisfies E. We define $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$, the category of (Σ, E)-algebras, to be the full subcategory of $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ containing only those algebras that satisfy E. There is an evident forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E) \to \mathbf{Set}$ which is the composition of the inclusion functor $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E) \to \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ and $U : \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{Set}$.[22]

[21] Similarly for satisfaction under a particular assignment ι:
$$\mathbb{A} \vDash^\iota E \iff \forall \phi \in E, \mathbb{A} \vDash^\iota \phi.$$

[22] We will denote all the forgetful functors with the symbol U unless we need to emphasize the distinction. However, thanks to the `knowledge` package, you can click on (or hover) that symbol to check exactly which forgetful functor it is referring to.

Examples 18. 1. With $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$, there are morally only four different equations:[23]

$$\vdash \mathsf{p} = \mathsf{p}, \quad x \vdash x = x, \quad x \vdash \mathsf{p} = x, \text{ and } \quad x, y \vdash x = y.$$

Any algebra $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies the first two equations because $[\![\mathsf{p}]\!]^\iota_A = [\![\mathsf{p}]\!]^\iota_A$, where $\iota : \emptyset \to A$ is the only possible assignment,[24] and $[\![x]\!]^\iota_A = \iota(x) = [\![x]\!]^\iota_A$ for all $\iota : \{x\} \to A$. If $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies the third, it means that A is a singleton because for any $a, b \in A$, the assignments $\iota_a = x \mapsto a$ and $\iota_b = x \mapsto b$ give us[25]

$$a = \iota_a(x) = [\![x]\!]^{\iota_a}_A = [\![\mathsf{p}]\!]^{\iota_a}_A = [\![\mathsf{p}]\!]^{\iota_b}_A = [\![x]\!]^{\iota_b}_A = \iota_b(x) = b.$$

If $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies the fourth equation, it is also a singleton because for any $a, b \in A$, the assignment ι sending x to a and y to b gives us

$$a = \iota(x) = [\![x]\!]^\iota_A = [\![y]\!]^\iota_A = \iota(y) = b.$$

Therefore,[26] there are only two things $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ can be for any E, either it is all of $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$, or it contains only the singletons.

[23] Let us not formally argue about that here, but your intuition on equality and the fact that terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ are either $x \in X$ or p should be enough to convince you.

[24] We write nothing before the turnstile ($\vdash$) instead of the empty set $\emptyset$.

[25] We find $a = b$ for any $a, b \in A$ and A contains at least one element, the interpretation of the constant p, so A is a singleton.

[26] Modulo the argument about these being all the possible equations over Σ.

2. With $\Sigma = \{+:2, \mathsf{e}:0\}$, there are many more possible equations, but the following three are quite famous:

$$x, y, z \vdash x + (y + z) = (x + y) + z, \quad x, y \vdash x + y = y + x, \text{ and } \quad x \vdash x + \mathsf{e} = x. \tag{15}$$

   We already saw in Example 12 that the first asserts associativity of the interpretation of $+$. With a similar argument, one shows that the second asserts $[\![+]\!]$ is commutative, and the third asserts $[\![\mathsf{e}]\!]$ is a neutral element (on the right) for $[\![+]\!]$.[27] Moreover, note that a homomorphism of Σ-algebras from $\mathbb{A}$ to $\mathbb{B}$ is any function $h : A \to B$ that satisfies

$$\forall a, a' \in A, \quad h([\![+]\!]_A(a, a')) = [\![+]\!]_B(h(a), h(a')) \text{ and } h([\![\mathsf{e}]\!]_A) = [\![\mathsf{e}]\!]_B.$$

   Namely, a homomorphism preserves the "addition" and its neutral element. Thus, letting E be the set containing the three equations in (15), we find that $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ is the category **CMon** of commutative monoids and monoid homomorphisms.

3. We can add a unary operation symbol $-$ to get $\Sigma = \{+:2, \mathsf{e}:0, -:1\}$, and add the equation $x \vdash x + (-x) = \mathsf{e}$ to those in (15),[28] and we can show that $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ is the category **Ab** of abelian groups and group homomorphisms.

[27] i.e. if $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $x \vdash x + \mathsf{e} = x$, then for all $a \in A$,

$$[\![+]\!]_A(a, [\![\mathsf{e}]\!]_A) = a.$$

[28] While the signature has changed between the two examples, the equations of (15) can be understood over both signatures because they concern terms constructed using the symbols common to both signatures.

Definition 19 (Algebraic theory)**.** Given a set E of equations over Σ, the **algebraic theory** generated by E, denoted by $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$, is the class of equations (over Σ) that are satisfied in all (Σ, E)-algebras:[29]

$$\mathfrak{Th}(E) = \{X \vdash s = t \mid \forall \mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E), \mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash s = t\}.$$

[29] Note that there is no guarantee that $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ is a set (in fact it never is) because there is no set of all equations (because the contexts can be any set).

Formulated differently, $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ contains the equations that are semantically entailed by E, namely $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$ if and only if

$$\forall \mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma), \quad \mathbb{A} \vDash E \implies \mathbb{A} \vDash \phi.$$

Of course, $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ contains all of E,[30] but also many more equations like $x \vdash x = x$ which is satisfied by any algebra. We will see in §1.3 how to find which equations are entailed by others.

[30] Because a (Σ, E)-algebra satisfies E by definition.

We call a class of equations an algebraic theory if it equals $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ for some set E of generating equations.

Example 20. If E contains the equations in (15), then $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ will contain all the equations that every commutative monoid satisfies. Here is a non-exhaustive list:

- $x \vdash \mathsf{e} + x = x$ says that $[\![\mathsf{e}]\!]$ is a neutral element on the left for $[\![+]\!]$ which is true because, by equations in (15), it $[\![\mathsf{e}]\!]$ is neutral on the right and $[\![+]\!]$ is commutative.
- $z, w \vdash z + w = w + z$ also states commutativity of $[\![+]\!]$ but with different variable names.
- $x, y, z, w \vdash (x + w) + (x + z) + (x + y) = ((x + x) + x) + (y + (z + (\mathsf{e} + w)))$ is just a random equation that can be shown using the properties of commutative monoids.

1.2 Free Algebras

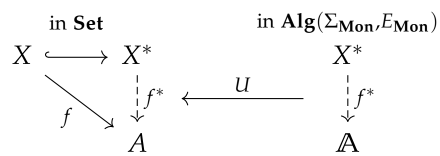
Up to now we have not given a single concrete example of an algebra, we give here a very special example.

Example 21 (Words)**.** Let $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}} = \{\cdot : 2, \mathtt{e} : 0\}$, $X = \{\mathtt{a}, \mathtt{b}, \cdots, \mathtt{z}\}$ be the set of (lowercase) letters in the latin alphabet, and X^* be the set of finite words using only these letters.[31] There is a natural $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$-algebra structure on X^* where $+$ is interpreted as concatenation, i.e. $[\![\cdot]\!]_{X^*}(u,v) = uv$, and $\mathtt{e}$ as the empty word ε. This algebra satisfies the equations defining a monoid given in (16).

[31] We are talking about words in a mathematical sense, so X^* contains weird stuff like $\mathtt{aczlp}$ and the empty word ε.

$$E_{\mathbf{Mon}} = \{x,y,z \vdash x \cdot (y \cdot z) = (x \cdot y) \cdot z, \quad x \vdash x \cdot \mathtt{e} = x, \quad x \vdash \mathtt{e} \cdot x = x\}. \tag{16}$$

In fact, X^* is the *free* monoid over X. This means that for any other $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}, E_{\mathbf{Mon}})$-algebra $\mathbb{A}$ and any function $f : X \to A$, there exists a unique homomorphism $f^* : X^* \to \mathbb{A}$ such that $f^*(x) = f(x)$ for all $x \in X \subseteq X^*$. This can be summarized in the following diagram.



(17)

The free $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}, E_{\mathbf{Mon}})$-algebra over any set is always[32] the set of finite words over that set with $\cdot$ and $\mathtt{e}$ interpreted as concatenation and the empty word respectively.

[32] We have to say up to isomorphism here if we want to be fully rigorous. Let us avoid this bulkiness here and later in most places where it can be inferred.

At a first look, X^* does not seem correlated to the operation symbols in $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ and the equations in $E_{\mathbf{Mon}}$, so it may seem hopeless to generalize this construction of free algebra for an arbitrary Σ and E. It is possible however to describe the algebra X^* starting from $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ and $E_{\mathbf{Mon}}$.

Recall that $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}} X$ is the set of all terms constructed with the symbols in $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ and the elements of X.[33] Since we want the interpretation of $\mathtt{e}$ to be a neutral element for the interpretation of $\cdot$, we could identify many terms together like $\mathtt{e}$ and $\mathtt{e} \cdot \mathtt{e}$, in fact whenever a term has an occuence of $\mathtt{e}$, we can remove it with no effect on its interpretation in a $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}, E_{\mathbf{Mon}})$-algebra. Similarly, since we want $\cdot$ to be interpreted as an associative operation, we could identify $\mathtt{r} \cdot (\mathtt{s} \cdot \mathtt{m})$ and $(\mathtt{r} \cdot \mathtt{s}) \cdot \mathtt{m}$, and more generally, we can rearrange the parentheses in a term with no effect on its interpretation in a $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}, E_{\mathbf{Mon}})$-algebra.

[33] For instance, it contains $\mathtt{e}$, $\mathtt{e} \cdot \mathtt{e}$, $\mathtt{a} \cdot \mathtt{a}$, $\mathtt{a} \cdot (\mathtt{r} \cdot (\mathtt{e} \cdot \mathtt{u}))$, and so on.

Squinting a bit, you can convince yourself that a $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$-term over X considered modulo occurrences of $\mathtt{e}$ and parentheses is the same thing as a finite word in X^*.[34] Under this correspondence, we find that the interpretation of $\cdot$ on X^* (which was concatenation) can be realized syntactically by the symbol $\cdot$. For example, the concatenation of the words corresponding to $\mathtt{r} \cdot \mathtt{r}$ and $\mathtt{u} \cdot \mathtt{p}$ is the word corresponding to $(\mathtt{r} \cdot \mathtt{r}) \cdot (\mathtt{u} \cdot \mathtt{p})$. The interpretation of $\mathtt{e}$ in X^* is the empty word which corresponds to $\mathtt{e}$. We conclude that the algebra X^* could have been described entirely using the syntax of $\Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ and equations in $E_{\mathbf{Mon}}$.

[34] For instance, both $\mathtt{r} \cdot (\mathtt{s} \cdot \mathtt{m})$ and $(\mathtt{r} \cdot \mathtt{s}) \cdot \mathtt{m}$ become the word $\mathtt{rsm}$ and $\mathtt{e}$, $\mathtt{e} \cdot \mathtt{e}$ and $\mathtt{e} \cdot (\mathtt{e} \cdot \mathtt{e})$ all become the empty word.

We promptly generalize this to other signatures and sets of equations. Fix a signature Σ and a set E of equations over Σ. For any set X, we can define a binary relation $\equiv_E$ on Σ-terms[35] that contains the pair (s,t) whenever the interpretation of s and t coincide in any (Σ,E)-algebra. Formally, we have for any $s,t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

[35] We omit the set X from the notation as it would be more bulky than illuminative.

$$s \equiv_E t \iff X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E). \tag{18}$$

We now show $\equiv_E$ is a congruence relation.

Lemma 22. *For any set X, the relation $\equiv_E$ is reflexive, symmetric, transitive, and satisfies for any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $s_1,\dots,s_n,t_1,\dots,t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,*

$$\forall 1 \leq i \leq n, s_i \equiv_E t_i \implies \mathsf{op}(s_1,\dots,s_n) \equiv_E \mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n). \tag{19}$$

Proof. Briefly, reflexivity, symmetry and transitivity all follow from the fact that equality satisfies these properties, and (19) follows from the fact that operation symbols are interpreted as *deterministic* functions, so they preserve equality. We detail this below.

(*Reflexivity*) For any $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and any Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$, $\mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash t = t$ because it holds that $[\![t]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$ for all $\iota : X \to A$.

(*Symmetry*) For any $s,t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$, if $\mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash s = t$, then $\mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash t = s$. Indeed, if $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$ holds for all ι, then $[\![t]\!]_A^\iota = [\![s]\!]_A^\iota$ holds too. Symmetry follows because if all (Σ,E)-algebras satisfy $X \vdash s = t$, then they also satisfy $X \vdash t = s$.

(*Transitivity*) For any $s,t,u \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, if all (Σ,E)-algebras satisfy $X \vdash s = t$ and $X \vdash t = u$, then they also satisfy $X \vdash s = u$.[36] Transitivity follows.

[36] Just like for symmetry, it is because for any $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ and $\iota : X \to A$, $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t]\!]_A^\iota$ with $[\![t]\!]_A^\iota = [\![u]\!]_A^\iota$ imply $[\![s]\!]_A^\iota = [\![u]\!]_A^\iota$.

(19) For any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$, $s_1,\dots,s_n,t_1,\dots,t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$, if $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $X \vdash s_i = t_i$ for all i, then for any assignment $\iota : X \to A$, we have $[\![s_i]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t_i]\!]_A^\iota$ for all i. Hence,

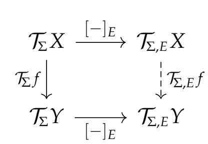
$$\begin{aligned}
[\![\mathsf{op}(s_1,\dots,s_n)]\!]_A^\iota &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![s_1]\!]_A^\iota,\dots,[\![s_n]\!]_A^\iota) && \text{by (6)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![t_1]\!]_A^\iota,\dots,[\![t_n]\!]_A^\iota) && \forall i, [\![s_i]\!]_A^\iota = [\![t_i]\!]_A^\iota\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}(s_1,\dots,s_n)]\!]_A^\iota && \text{by (6),}
\end{aligned}$$

which means $\mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash \mathsf{op}(s_1,\dots,s_n) = \mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)$. This was true for all Σ-algebras, so we can use the same arguments as above to conclude (19).

□

This lemma shows $\equiv_E$ is an equivalence relation, so we can define terms modulo E. Given Σ, E and X, let $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv_E$ denote the set of **Σ-terms modulo** E. We will write $[-]_E : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ for the canonical quotient map, so $[t]_E$ is the equivalence class of t in $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$.

This yields a functor $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ which sends a function $f : X \to Y$ to the unique function $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f$ making (20) commute, i.e. satisfying $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f([t]_E) = [\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]_E$. By definition, $[-]_E$ is also a natural transformation from $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ to $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$.



(20)

Definition 23 (Term algebra, semantically)**.** The **term algebra** for (Σ, E) on X is the Σ-algebra whose carrier is $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ and whose interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ is defined by[37]

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([t_1]_E, \dots, [t_n]_E) = [\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]_E. \tag{21}$$

We denote this algebra by $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ or simply $\mathbb{T}X$.

[37] This is well-defined (i.e. invariant under change of representative) by (19).

A main motivation behind this definition is that it makes $[-]_E : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ a homomorphism,[38] namely, (22) commutes.

[38] Indeed, (21) looks exactly like (1) with $h = [-]_E$, $A = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $B = \mathbb{T}X$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} X \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_X}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow[{[-]_E}]{} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} X \end{array} \tag{22}$$

Remark 24. We can understand Definition 23 a bit more abstractly. If $\mathbb{A}$ is a Σ-algebra and $R \subseteq A \times A$ is a congruence[39], then the quotient A/R inherits a Σ-algebra structure defined as in (21) ($[a]$ denotes the equivalence class of a in A/R):

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{A/R}([a_1], \dots, [a_n]) = [[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A(a_1, \dots, a_n)]. \tag{23}$$

[39] i.e. for all $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$

$$\forall i, (a_i, b_i) \in R \implies (\mathsf{op}(a_1, \dots, a_n), \mathsf{op}(b_1, \dots, b_n)) \in R.$$

Then, $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ is the quotient of the algebra $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ defined in Remark 16 by the congruence $\equiv_E$. From this point of view, one can give an equivalent defintion of $\equiv_E$ as the smallest congruence on $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ such that the quotient satisfies E.

It is very easy to "compute" in the term algebra because all operations are realized syntactically, that is, only by manipulating symbols. Let us first look at the interpretation of Σ-terms in $\mathbb{T}X$, i.e. the function $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$. It was defined inductively to yield[40]

$$[\![\eta^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X}([t]_E)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = [t]_E \text{ and } [\![\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\![t_1]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}, \dots, [\![t_n]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}). \tag{24}$$

[40] where $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$, and $t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} X$.

Remark 25. In particular, when E is empty, the set $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X$ is $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ quotiented by $\equiv_\emptyset$, but one can show that equivalence relation $\equiv_\emptyset$ is equal to equality $(=)$, i.e. $\mathfrak{Th}(\emptyset)$ only contains equation of the form $X \vdash t = t$.[41] Therefore, $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. Moreover, since $[-]_\emptyset$ is the identity map, we find that (21) becomes the definition of the interpretations given in Remark 16, so $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X$ is the algebra on $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ we had defined. Also, we find the interpretation of terms $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X}$ is the flattening.[42]

[41] For any other equation $X \vdash s = t$ where s and t are not the same term, the Σ-algebra $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ does not satisfy because the assignment $\eta^\Sigma_X : X \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ yields

$$[\![s]\!]^{\eta^\Sigma_X}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X} = s \neq t = [\![t]\!]^{\eta^\Sigma_X}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X}.$$

[42] By Remark 16 or by comparing (24) when $E = \emptyset$ and μ^Σ_X.

Example 26. Let $\Sigma = \Sigma_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ and $E = E_{\mathbf{Mon}}$ be the signature and equations defnining monoids as explained in Example 21. We saw informally that $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ is in correspondence with the set X^* of finite words over X, and we already have a monoid structure on X^*.[43] Thus, we may wonder whether the term algebra $\mathbb{T}X$ describes the same monoid. Let us compute the interpretation of $u \cdot (v \cdot w)$ where $u = \mathtt{uu}$, $v = \mathtt{vv}$ and $w = \mathtt{www}$ are words in $X^* \cong \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$. First we use the inductive definition:

[43] The interpretation of $\cdot$ and e is concatenation and the empty word.

$$[\![u \cdot (v \cdot w)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\![u]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}, [\![v \cdot w]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}) = [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\![u]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}, [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\![v]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}, [\![w]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X})).$$

Next, we choose a representative for $u, v, w \in \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ and apply the base step of the inductive definition:

$$[\![u \cdot (v \cdot w)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\mathtt{u}\cdot\mathtt{u}]_E, [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\mathtt{v}\cdot\mathtt{v}]_E, [\mathtt{w}\cdot(\mathtt{w}\cdot\mathtt{w})]_E)).$$

Finally, we can apply (21) a couple times to find

$$[\![u \cdot (v \cdot w)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = [\![\cdot]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}([\mathtt{u}\cdot\mathtt{u}]_E, [(\mathtt{v}\cdot\mathtt{v})\cdot(\mathtt{w}\cdot(\mathtt{w}\cdot\mathtt{w}))]_E) = [(\mathtt{u}\cdot\mathtt{u})\cdot((\mathtt{v}\cdot\mathtt{v})\cdot(\mathtt{w}\cdot(\mathtt{w}\cdot\mathtt{w})))]_E,$$

which means that the word corresponding to $[\![u \cdot (v \cdot w)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ is $\mathtt{uuvvwww}$, i.e. the concatenation of u, v and w.

In general (for other signatures), what happens when applying $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ to some big term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ can be decomposed in three steps.

1. Apply the inductive definition until you have an expression built out of many $[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ and $[\![c]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ where $\mathsf{op} \in \Sigma$ and c is an equivalence class of Σ-terms.

2. Choose a representative for each such classes (i.e. $c = [t]_E$).

3. Use (21) repeatedly until the result is just an equivalence class in $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$.

Working with terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ as trees whose leaves are labelled in $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$, $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ replaces each leaf by the tree corresponding to a representative for the equivalence class of the leaf's label, and then returns the equivalence class of the resulting tree. In this sense, $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ looks a lot like the flattening μ^Σ_X except it deals with equivalence classes of terms. This motivates the definition of $\mu^{\Sigma,E}_X$ to be the unique function making (25) commute.[44]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \xrightarrow{[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X \\ & {\scriptstyle [-]_E}\searrow \quad \nearrow{\scriptstyle \mu^{\Sigma,E}_X} & \\ & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \end{array} \qquad (25)$$

[44] This guarantees $\mu^{\Sigma,E}_X$ satisfies the following equations that looks like the inductive definition of μ^Σ_X in (4): for any $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, $\mu^{\Sigma,E}_X([[t]_E]_E) = [t]_E$ and for any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

$$\mu^{\Sigma,E}_X([\mathsf{op}([t_1]_E, \dots, [t_n]_E)]_E) = [\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]_E.$$

Thanks to Remark 25, we can immediately see that $\mu^{\Sigma,\varnothing}_X = \mu^\Sigma_X$ because $[-]_\varnothing$ is the identity, and $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\varnothing}X} = \mu^\Sigma_X$.

The first thing we showed when defining μ^Σ_X was that it yielded a natural transformation $\mu^\Sigma : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \Rightarrow \mathcal{T}_\Sigma$. We can also do this for $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$.

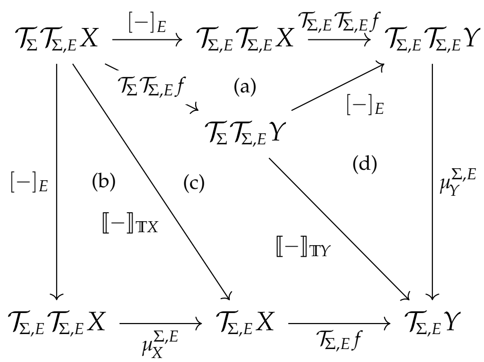
Proposition 27. *The family of maps $\mu^{\Sigma,E}_X : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ is natural in X.*

Proof. We need to prove that for any function $f : X \to Y$, the square below commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^{\Sigma,E}_X}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mu^{\Sigma,E}_Y} \\ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f]{} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y \end{array} \qquad (26)$$

We can pave the following diagram.[45]

[45] By paving a diagram, we mean to build a large diagram out of smaller ones, showing all the smaller one commute, and then concluding the bigger must commute. We often refer parts of the diagram with them letters written inside them, and explain how each of them commutes one at a time.



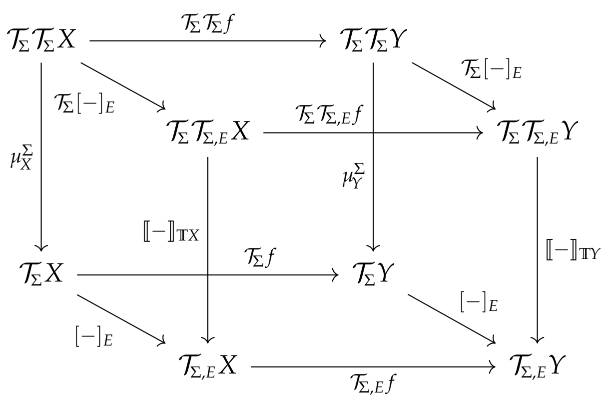
All of (a), (b) and (d) commute by definition. In more details, (a) is an instance of (20) with X replaced by $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$, Y by $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y$ and f by $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f$, and both (b) and (d) are instances of (25). To show (c) commutes, we draw another diagram that looks like a cube and where (c) is the front face. We can show all the other faces commute, and then use the fact that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$ is surjective (i.e. epic) to conclude that the front face must also commute.[46]

[46] In more details, the left and right faces commute by (22), the bottom and top faces commute by (20), and the back face commutes by (5).

The function $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$ is surjective (i.e. epic) because $[-]_E$ is (it is a canonical quotient map) and functors on **Set** preserve epimorphisms (if we assume the axiom of choice). Thus, it suffices to show that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$ pre-composed with the bottom path or the top path of the front face gives the same result.

Now it is just a matter of going around the cube using the commutativity of the other faces. Here is the complete derivation (we write which face was used as justifications for each step).

$$\begin{array}{ll}
\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f \circ [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E & \\
= \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f \circ [-]_E \circ \mu_X^\Sigma & \text{left}\\
= [-]_E \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f \circ \mu_X^\Sigma & \text{bottom}\\
= [-]_E \circ \mu_Y^\Sigma \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f & \text{back}\\
= [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}Y} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f & \text{right}\\
= [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}Y} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E & \text{top}
\end{array}$$



The first diagram we paved implies (110) commutes because $[-]_E$ is surjective. □

The front face of the cube is interesting on its own, it says that for any function $f : X \to Y$, $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f$ is a homomorphism from $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ to $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y$. We redraw it below for future reference.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y\\
{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}Y}}\\
\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f]{} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}Y
\end{array} \tag{27}$$

Stating it like this may remind you of Lemma 15 and Remark 16. We will need a variant of Lemma 15 for $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$, but there is a slight obstacle due to types. Indeed, given a Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$ we would like to prove a square like in (28) commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A\\
{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A}\\
\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A & \xrightarrow[{[\![-]\!]_A}]{} & A
\end{array} \tag{28}$$

However, the arrows on top and bottom do not really exist, the interpretation $[\![-]\!]_A$ takes terms over A as input, not equivalence classes of terms. The quick fix is to assume that $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies the equations in E. This means that $[\![-]\!]_A$ is well-defined on equivalence class of terms becuase if $[s]_E = [t]_E$, then $A \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$, so $\mathbb{A}$

satisfies that equation, and taking the assignment $\mathrm{id}_A : A \to A$, we obtain

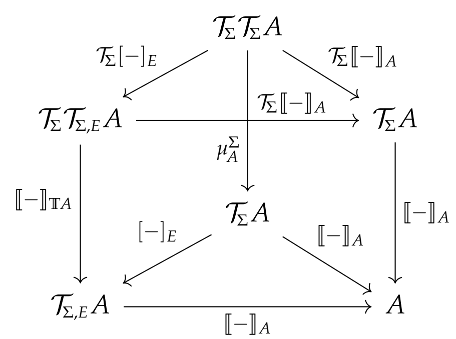
$$[\![s]\!]_A = [\![s]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_A} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_A} = [\![t]\!]_A.$$

When $\mathbb{A}$ is a (Σ, E)-algebra, we abusively write $[\![-]\!]_A$ for the interpretation of terms and equivalence classes of terms as in (29).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{[-]_E} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A \\ & {\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A}\searrow \quad \swarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A} & \\ & A & \end{array} \tag{29}$$

Lemma 28. *For any* (Σ, E)*-algebra* $\mathbb{A}$*, the square* (28) *commutes.*

Proof. Consider the following diagram that we can view as a triangular prism and whose front face is (28). Both triangles commute by (29), the square face at the back and on the left commutes by (22), and the square face at the back and on the right commutes by (11). With the same trick as in the proof of Proposition 27 using the surjectivity of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$, we conclude that the front face commutes.[47]



□

[47] Here is the complete derivation.

$$\begin{aligned} & [\![-]\!]_A \circ [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E \\ &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ [-]_E \circ \mu_A^\Sigma && \text{left} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mu_A^\Sigma && \text{bottom} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A && \text{right} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E && \text{top} \end{aligned}$$

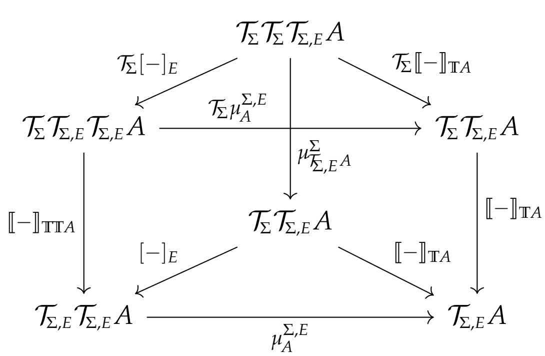
Then, since $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$ is epic, we conclude that $[\![-]\!]_A \circ [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} = [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A$.

An important consequence of Lemma 15 was (13) saying that flattening is a homomorphism from $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\varnothing}\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\varnothing}A$ to $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\varnothing}A$. This is also true when E is not empty, i.e. $\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}$ is a homomorphism frmo $\mathbb{T}\mathbb{T}A$ to $\mathbb{T}A$.

Lemma 29. *For any set* A*, the following square commutes.*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mu_A^{\Sigma,E}} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A \\ {\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}\mathbb{T}A}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}} \\ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A & \xrightarrow[\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}]{} & \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A \end{array} \tag{30}$$

Proof. We prove it exactly like Lemma 28 with the following diagram.[48]



[48] The top and bottom faces commute by definition of $\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}$ (25), the back-left face by (22), and the back-right face by (11).

Then, $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E$ is epic, so the following derivation suffices.

$$\begin{aligned} & \mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}\mathbb{T}A} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E \\ &= \mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ [-]_E \circ \mu^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A} && \text{left} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} \circ \mu^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} A} && \text{bottom} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} && \text{right} \\ &= [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E && \text{top} \end{aligned}$$

□

In a moment, we will show that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ is not only a Σ-algebra, but also a (Σ, E)-algebra. This requires us to talk about satisfaction of equations, hence about the interpretation of terms in some $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y$ under an assignment $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$. By the definition $[\![-]\!]^\sigma_{\mathbb{T}X} = [\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma$, and our informal description of $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$, we can infer that $[\![t]\!]^\sigma_{\mathbb{T}X}$ is the equivalence class of the term t where all occurences of the variable y have been substituted by a representative of $\sigma(y)$.

In particular, this means that under the assignment $\sigma : X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ that sends a variable x to its equivalence class $[x]_E$, the interpretation of a term $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ is $[t]_E$.[49] We prove this formally below.

[49] The representative chosen for $\sigma(x)$ is x so the term t is not modified.

Lemma 30. *Let* $\sigma = X \xrightarrow{\eta^\Sigma_X} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{[-]_E} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ *be an assignment. Then,* $[\![-]\!]^\sigma_{\mathbb{T}X} = [-]_E$.

Proof. We proceed by induction. For the base case, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![\eta^\Sigma_X(x)]\!]^\sigma_{\mathbb{T}X} &= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma(\eta^\Sigma_X(x))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (7)}\\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(\eta^\Sigma_X(x)))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by Proposition 6}\\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\eta^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X}(\eta^\Sigma_X(x)))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (3)}\\
&= [\![\eta^\Sigma_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X}([\eta^\Sigma_X(x)]_E)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (3)}\\
&= [\eta^\Sigma_X(x)]_E && \text{by (24)}
\end{aligned}$$

For the inductive step, if $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![t]\!]^\sigma_{\mathbb{T}X} &= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma(t)]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (7)}\\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by Proposition 6}\\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} &&\\
&= [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_1), \ldots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_n)))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (2)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_1)), \ldots, \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_n)))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} && \text{by (2)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}\left([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_1))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}, \cdots, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_E(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\eta^\Sigma_X(t_n))]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}\right) && \text{by (24)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}\left([t_1]_E, \cdots, [t_n]_E\right) && \text{I.H.}\\
&= [\mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)]_E && \text{by (21)}
\end{aligned}$$

□

We will denote that special assignment $\eta^{\Sigma,E}_X = [-]_E \circ \eta^\Sigma_X : X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$.[50] A quick corollary of the previous lemma is that for any equation ϕ with context X, ϕ belongs to $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ if and only if the algebra $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ satisfies it under the assignment $\eta^{\Sigma,E}_X$.

[50] Note that $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ becomes a natural transformation $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{Set}} \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$ because it is the vertical composition $[-]_E \cdot \eta^\Sigma$.

Lemma 31. *Let* $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, $X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$ *if and only if* $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X \vDash^{\eta^{\Sigma,E}_X} X \vdash s = t$.[51]

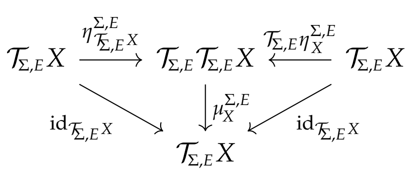
[51] *Proof.* By Lemma 30, we have

$$[\![s]\!]^{\eta^{\Sigma,E}_X}_{\mathbb{T}X} = [s]_E \text{ and } [\![t]\!]^{\eta^{\Sigma,E}_X}_{\mathbb{T}X} = [t]_E,$$

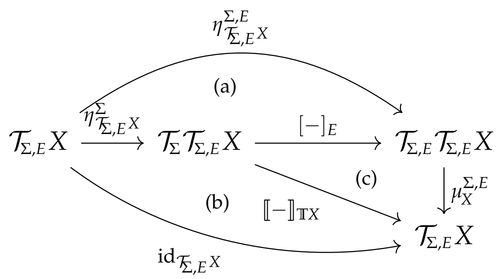
then by definition of $\equiv_E$, $X \vdash s = t \in E$ if and only if $[s]_E = [t]_E$.

The interaction between μ^Σ and η^Σ is mimicked by $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$ and $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$.

Lemma 32. *The following diagram commutes.*



Proof. For the triangle on the left, we pave the following diagram.



(31)

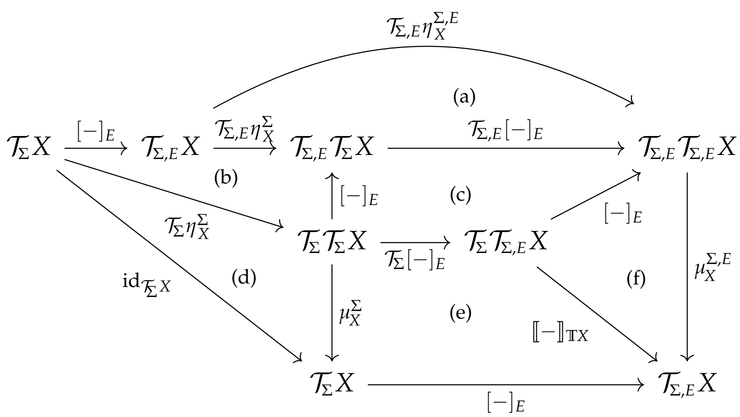
Showing (31) commutes:

(a) Definition of $\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}$.

(b) Definition of $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ (24).

(c) Definition of $\mu_X^{\Sigma,E}$ (25).

For the triangle on the right, we show that $[-]_E = \mu_X^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\eta_X^{\Sigma,E} \circ [-]_E$ by paving (32), and we can conclude since $[-]_E$ is surjective (or epic) that $\mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X} = \mu_X^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}$.



(32)

Showing (32) commutes:

(a) Definition of $\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}$ and functoriality of $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$.

(b) Naturality of $[-]_E$ (20).

(c) Naturality of $[-]_E$ again.

(d) Definition of μ_X^{Σ} (4).

(e) By (22).

(f) By (25).

□

We single out another special case of interpretation in a term algebra when E is empty (recall from Remark 25 that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X$ is the algebra on $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ whose interpretation of op applies op syntactically).

Definition 33 (Substitution)**.** Given a signature Σ, an empty set of equations, and an assignment $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,[52] we call $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}^{\sigma}$ the **substitution** map, and we denote it by $\sigma^* : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. We saw in Remark 25 that $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X} = \mu_X^\Sigma$, thus substitution is

$$\sigma^* = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \sigma} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{\mu_X^\Sigma} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X. \tag{33}$$

[52] We can identify $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ with $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,\emptyset}X$ because $\equiv_\emptyset$ is the equality relation.

In words, σ^* replaces the occurences of a variable y by $\sigma(y)$.[53]

[53] You may be more familiar with the notation $t[\sigma(y)/y]$ (e.g. from substitution in the λ-calculus). An inductive definition can also be given: for any $y \in Y$, $\sigma^*(\eta_Y^\Sigma(y)) = \sigma(y)$, and

$$\sigma^*(\mathsf{op}(t_1,\ldots,t_n)) = \mathsf{op}(\sigma^*(t_1),\ldots,\sigma^*(t_n)).$$

That simple description makes substitution a little special, and the following result has even deeper implications. It morally says that substitution preserves the satisfaction of equations.

Lemma 34. *Let $Y \vdash s = t$ be an equation, $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ an assignment, and $\mathbb{A}$ a Σ-algebra. If $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $Y \vdash s = t$, then it also satisfies $X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$.*

Proof. Let $\iota : X \to A$ be an assignment, we need to show $[\![\sigma^*(s)]\!]_A^\iota = [\![\sigma^*(t)]\!]_A^\iota$. Define the assignment $\iota_\sigma : Y \to A$ that sends $y \in Y$ to $[\![\sigma(y)]\!]_A^\iota$, we claim that $[\![-]\!]_A^{\iota_\sigma} = [\![\sigma^*(-)]\!]_A^\iota$. The lemma then follows because by hypothesis, $[\![s]\!]_A^{\iota_\sigma} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\iota_\sigma}$. The following derivation proves our claim.

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![-]\!]_A^{\iota_\sigma} &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\iota_\sigma) && \text{by (7)}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma([\![\sigma(-)]\!]_A^\iota) && \text{definition of } \iota_\sigma\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\left([\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota \circ \sigma\right) && \text{by (7)}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma && \text{by Proposition 6}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mu_A^\Sigma \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma && \text{by (11)}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota \circ \mu_Y^\Sigma \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\sigma && \text{by (5)}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\iota \circ \sigma^* && \text{by (33)}\\
&= [\![\sigma^*(-)]\!]_A^\iota. && \text{by (7)} \qquad \square
\end{aligned}$$

We are finally ready to show that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$ is a (Σ, E)-algebra.[54]

[54] All the work we have been doing finally pays off.

Proposition 35. *For any set A, the term algebra $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$ satisfies all the equations in E.*

Proof. Let $X \vdash s = t$ belong to E and $\iota : X \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$ be an assignment. We need to show that $[\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^\iota = [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^\iota$. We factor ι into[55]

$$\iota = X \xrightarrow{\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\iota} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A \xrightarrow{\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A.$$

[55] This factoring is correct because

$$\begin{aligned}
\iota &= \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A} \circ \iota\\
&= \mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ \eta_{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A}^{\Sigma,E} \circ \iota && \text{Lemma 32}\\
&= \mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\iota \circ \eta_X^{\Sigma,E}. && \text{naturality of } \eta^{\Sigma,E}
\end{aligned}$$

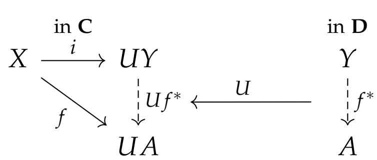
Now, Lemma 31 says that the equation is satisfied in $\mathbb{T}X$ under the assignment $\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}$, i.e. that $[\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}^{\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} = [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}^{\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}}$. We also know by Lemma 14 that homomorphisms preserve satisfaction, so we can apply it twice using the facts that $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\iota$ and $\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}$ are homomorphisms (by (27) and (30) respectively) to conclude that

$$[\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^\iota = [\![s]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^{\mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\iota \circ \eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} = [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^{\mu_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\iota \circ \eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} = [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{T}A}^\iota. \qquad \square$$

We now know that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ belongs to $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$, in order to tie up the parallel with Example 21, we will show that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$ is the free (Σ, E)-algebra over X.

Definition 36 (Free object)**.** Let $\mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{D}$ be categories, $U : \mathbf{D} \to \mathbf{C}$ be a functor between them, and $X \in \mathbf{C}_0$. A **free object** on X (with respect to U) is an object $Y \in \mathbf{D}_0$ along with a morphism $i \in \mathrm{Hom}_\mathbf{C}(X, UY)$ such that for any object $A \in \mathbf{D}_0$ and morphism $f \in \mathrm{Hom}_\mathbf{C}(X, UA)$, there exists a unique morphism $f^* \in \mathrm{Hom}_\mathbf{D}(Y, A)$ such that $Uf^* \circ i = f$. This is summarized in the following diagram.[56]

[56] This is almost a copy of (17).



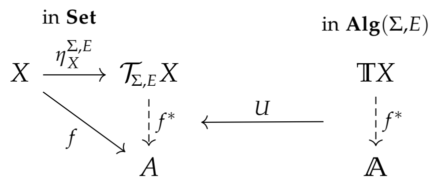
(34)

Proposition 37. *Free objects are unique up to isomorphism, namely, if Y and Y' are free objects on X, then $Y \cong Y'$.*[57]

[57] Very abstractly: a free object on X is the same thing as an initial object in the comma category $\Delta(X) \downarrow U$, and initial objects are unique up to isomorphism.

Proposition 38. *For any set X, the term algebra $\mathbb{T}X$ is the free (Σ, E)-algebra on X.*

Proof. Let $\mathbb{A}$ be another (Σ, E)-algebra and $f : X \to A$ a function. We claim that $f^* = [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} f$ is the unique homomorphism making the following commute.



First, f^* is a homomorphism because it is the composite of two homomorphisms $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} f$ (by (27)) and $[\![-]\!]_A$ (by Lemma 28 since $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies E). Next, the triangle commutes by the following derivation.

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} f \circ \eta_X^{\Sigma,E} &= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \eta_A^{\Sigma,E} \circ f && \text{naturality of } \eta^{\Sigma,E} \\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ [-]_E \circ \eta_A^{\Sigma} \circ f && \text{definition of } \eta^{\Sigma,E} \\
&= [\![-]\!]_A \circ \eta_A^{\Sigma} \circ f && \text{by (29)} \\
&= f && \text{definition of } [\![-]\!]_A \text{ (6)}
\end{aligned}$$

Finally, uniqueness follows from the inductive definition of $\mathbb{T}X$ and the homomorphism property. Briefly, if we know the action of a homomorphism on equivalence classes of terms of depth 0, we can infer all of its action because all other classes of terms can be obtained by applying operation symbols.[58] □

[58] Formally, let $f, g : \mathbb{T}X \to \mathbb{A}$ be two homomorphisms such that for any $x \in X$, $f[x]_E = g[x]_E$, then, we can show that $f = g$. For any $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, we showed in Lemma 30 that $[t]_E = [\![t]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}^{\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}}$. Then using (9), we have

$$f[t]_E = [\![t]\!]_A^{f\circ\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{g\circ\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} = g[t]_E,$$

where the second inequality follows by hypothesis that f and g agree on equivalence classes of terms of depth 0.

Once we have free objects, we have an adjunction, and once we have an adjunction, we have a monad, so we need to talk about monads. Unfortunately, our univeral algebra spiel is not finished yet, we will get back to monads shortly.

1.3 Equational Logic

We were happy that interpretations in the term algebra are computed syntactically, but there is a big caveat. Evertything is done modulo $\equiv_E$ which was defined in (18) to morally contain all equations in $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$, that is, all equations semantically implied by E. Equational logic is a deductive system that allows to derive syntactically all of $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ starting from E.

In Lemma 22, we proved that $\equiv_E$ is a congruence (i.e. reflexive, symmetric, transitive, and invariant under operations), and in Lemma 34 we showed $\equiv_E$ is also preserved by substitutions. This can help us syntactically derive $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ because, for instance, if we know $X \vdash s = t \in E$, we can conclude $X \vdash t = s \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$ by symmetry. Then, by transitivity, we can conclude that $X \vdash s = s \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$, which we already knew by reflexivity. This can be summarized with the inference rules of **equational logic** in Figure 1.3.

The first four rules are fairly simple, and they essentially say that equality is an equivalence relation that is preserved by operations. The Sub rule looks a bit more complicated, it is named after the function σ^* used in the conclusion which

$$\frac{}{X \vdash t = t}\ \textsc{Refl} \qquad \frac{X \vdash s = t}{X \vdash t = s}\ \textsc{Symm} \qquad \frac{X \vdash s = t \qquad X \vdash t = u}{X \vdash s = u}\ \textsc{Trans}$$

$$\frac{\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma \qquad \forall 1 \leq i \leq n, X \vdash s_i = t_i}{X \vdash \mathsf{op}(s_1, \dots, s_n) = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)}\ \textsc{Cong}$$

$$\frac{\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \qquad Y \vdash s = t}{X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)}\ \textsc{Sub}$$

Figure 1.3: Rules of equational logic over the signature Σ, where X and Y can be any set, and s, t, u, s_i and t_i can be any terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. As indicated in the premises of the rules Cong and Sub, they can be instantiated for any n-ary operation symbol and for any function σ respectively.

we called substitution. Intuitively, it reflects the fact that variables in the context Y are universally quantified. If you know $Y \vdash s = t$ holds, then you can replace each variable $y \in Y$ by $\sigma(y)$ (which may even be a complex terms using new variables in X), and you can prove that $X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$ holds. We did this in Lemma 34, and the argument to extract from there is that the interpretation of $\sigma^*(t)$ under some assignment $\iota : X \to A$ is equal to the interpretation of t under the assignment ι_σ sending $y \in Y$ to the interpretation of $\sigma(y)$ under ι. Since satisfaction of $Y \vdash s = t$ means satisfaction under any assignment (this is where universal quantification comes in), we conclude that $X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$ must be satisfied.

Definition 39 (Derivation)**.** A **derivation**[59] of $X \vdash s = t$ in equational logic with axioms E (a set of equations) is a finite rooted tree such that:

[59] Many other definitions of derivation exist, and our treatment of them will not be 100% rigorous.

- all nodes are labelled by equations,
- the root is labelled by $X \vdash s = t$,
- when an internal node (not a leaf) is labelled by ϕ and its children are labelled by $\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n$, there is a inference rule in Figure 1.3 which concludes ϕ from $\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n$, and
- all the leaves are either in E or instances of Refl, i.e. an equation $Y \vdash u = u$ for some set Y and $u \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y$.

Example 40. We write a derivation with the same notation used to specify the inference rules in Figure 1.3. Consider the signature $\Sigma = \{+ : 2, \mathsf{e} : 0\}$ with E containing the equations defining commutative monoids in (15). Here is a derivation of $x, y, z \vdash x + (y + z) = z + (x + y)$ in equational logic with axioms E.

$$\dfrac{\dfrac{}{x,y,z \vdash x + (y+z) = (x+y) + z}\in E \qquad \dfrac{\sigma = \begin{matrix} x \mapsto x + y \\ y \mapsto z \end{matrix} \qquad \dfrac{}{x,y \vdash x + y = y + x}\in E}{x,y,z \vdash (x+y) + z = z + (x+y)}\ \textsc{Sub}}{x,y,z \vdash x + (y+z) = z + (x+y)}\ \textsc{Trans}$$

Given any set of equations E, we denote by $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ the class of equations that can be proven from E in equational logic, i.e. $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ if and only if there is a derivation of ϕ in equational logic with axioms E.

Our goal for the rest of this section is to prove that $\mathfrak{Th}'(E) = \mathfrak{Th}(E)$. We say that equational logic is sound and complete for (Σ, E)-algebras. Less concisely, soundness means that whenever equational logic proves an equation ϕ with axioms E, then ϕ is satisfied by all (Σ, E)-algebras, and completeness says that whenever an equation ϕ is satisfied by all (Σ, E)-algebras, then there is a derivation of ϕ in equational logic with axioms E.

Soundness is a straightforward consequence of earlier results.[60]

[60] In the story we are telling here, the rules of equational logic were designed to be sound because we knew some properties of $\equiv_E$ already. In general when defining rules of a logic, we may use intuitions and later prove soundness to confirm them, or realize that soundness does not hold and infirm them.

Theorem 41 (Soundness)**.** *If $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}'(E)$, then $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$.*

Proof. In the proof of Lemma 22, we proved that each of Refl, Symm, Trans, and Cong are sound rules for a fixed arbitrary algebra. Namely, if $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ satisfies the equations on top, then it satisfies the one on the bottom. Lemma 34 states the same soundness property for Sub. This implies a weaker property: if all (Σ, E)-algebras satisfy the equations on top, then they satisfy the one on the bottom.[61]

[61] This is a classical theorem of first order logic:

$$(\forall A.(PA \Rightarrow QA)) \Rightarrow (\forall A.PA \Rightarrow \forall A.QA)$$

Now, if $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ was proven using equational logic and the axioms in E, then since all $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ satisfy all the axioms, by repeatedly applying the weaker property above for each rule in the derivation, we find that all $\mathbb{A} \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ satisfy ϕ, i.e. $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$. □

Completeness is a wilder beast we need to tame. The more classical proofs rely on a theory of congruences. Our method is based on uniqueness free algebras (Proposition 37). We will define an algebra exactly like $\mathbb{T}A$ but using the equality relation induced by $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ instead $\equiv_E$ which is induced by $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$. We then show that algebra is the free (Σ, E)-algebra and conclude that $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ and $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ must coincide (this proves soundness again).

Fix a signature Σ and a set E of equations over Σ. For any set X, we can define a binary relation $\equiv'_E$ on Σ-terms[62] that contains the pair (s,t) whenever $X \vdash s = t$ can be proven in equational logic. Formally, we have for any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

[62] Again, we omit the set X from the notation.

$$s \equiv'_E t \iff X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}'(E). \tag{35}$$

We can show $\equiv'_E$ is a congruence relation.

Lemma 42. *For any set X, the relation $\equiv'_E$ is reflexive, symmetric, transitive, and for any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $s_1, \dots, s_n, t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,*

$$\forall 1 \leq i \leq n, s_i \equiv'_E t_i \implies \mathsf{op}(s_1, \dots, s_n) \equiv'_E \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n). \tag{36}$$

Proof. This is immediate from the presence of Refl, Symm, Trans, and Cong in the rules of equational logic. □

We write $\wr - \int_E : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E$ for the canonical quotient map, so $\wr t \int_E$ is the equivalence class of t modulo the congruence $\equiv'_E$ induced by equational logic.

Definition 43 (Term algebra, syntactically)**.** The new term algebra for (Σ, E) on X is the Σ-algebra whose carrier is $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E$ and whose interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ is defined by[63]

[63] This is well-defined (i.e. invariant under change of representative) by (36).

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}'X}(\lbag t_1 \rbag_E, \dots, \lbag t_n \rbag_E) = \lbag \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n) \rbag_E. \tag{37}$$

We denote this algebra by $\mathbb{T}'_{\Sigma,E}X$ or simply $\mathbb{T}'X$.

We will prove this alternative definition of the term algebra coincides with $\mathbb{T}X$. First, we have to show that $\mathbb{T}'X$ belongs to $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ like we did for $\mathbb{T}X$ in Proposition 35, and we prove a technical lemma before that.

Lemma 44. *Let $\iota : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E$ be an assignment. For any function $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ satisfying $\lbag \sigma(y) \rbag_E = \iota(y)$ for all $y \in Y$, we have $[\![-]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} = \lbag \sigma^*(-) \rbag_E$.*

Proof. We proceed by induction. For the base case, we have by definition of the interpretation of terms (6), definition of σ, and definition of σ^* (33),

$$[\![\eta^\Sigma_Y(y)]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} \overset{(6)}{=} \iota(y) = \lbag \sigma(y) \rbag_E \overset{(33)}{=} \lbag \sigma^*(\eta^\Sigma_Y(y)) \rbag_E.$$

For the inductive step, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}'X}([\![t_1]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X}, \dots, [\![t_n]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X}) && \text{by (6)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\mathbb{T}'X}(\lbag \sigma^*(t_1) \rbag_E, \dots, \lbag \sigma^*(t_n) \rbag_E) && \text{I.H.}\\
&= \lbag \mathsf{op}(\sigma^*(t_1), \dots, \sigma^*(t_n)) \rbag_E && \text{by (37)}\\
&= \lbag \sigma^*(\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)) \rbag_E. && \text{definition of } \sigma^* \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Proposition 45. *For any set X, $\mathbb{T}'X$ satisfies all the equations in E.*

Proof. Let $Y \vdash s = t$ belong to E and $\iota : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E$ be an assignment. By the axiom of choice,[64] there is a function $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ satisfying $\lbag \sigma(y) \rbag_E = \iota(y)$ for all $y \in Y$. Thanks to Lemma 44, it is enough to show $\lbag \sigma^*(s) \rbag_E = \lbag \sigma^*(t) \rbag_E$.[65] Equivalently, by definition of $\lbag - \rbag_E$ and $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$, we can just exhibit a derivation of $X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$ in equational logic with axioms E. This is rather simple because that equation can be proven with the Sub rule instantiated with $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and the equation $Y \vdash s = t$ which is an axiom. $\square$

[64] Choice implies the quotient map $\lbag - \rbag_E$ has a left inverse $r : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and we can then set $\sigma = r \circ \iota$.

[65] By Lemma 44, it implies

$$[\![s]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} = \lbag \sigma^*(s) \rbag_E = \lbag \sigma^*(t) \rbag_E = [\![t]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X},$$

and since ι was an arbitrary assignment, we conclude that $\mathbb{T}'X \vDash Y \vdash s = t$.

Completeness of equational logic readily follows.

Theorem 46 (Completeness)**.** *If $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$, then $\phi \in \mathfrak{Th}'(E)$.*

Proof. Write $\phi = X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$. By Proposition 45 and definition of $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$, we know that $\mathbb{T}'X \vDash \phi$. In particular, $\mathbb{T}'X$ satisfies ϕ under the assignment

$$\iota = X \xrightarrow{\eta^\Sigma_X} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{\lbag - \rbag_E} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv'_E,$$

namely, $[\![s]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} = [\![t]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X}$. Moreover with $\sigma = \eta^\Sigma_X$, we can show σ satisfies the hypothesis of Lemma 44 and $\sigma^* = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X}$,[66] thus we conclude

$$\lbag s \rbag_E = [\![s]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} = [\![t]\!]^\iota_{\mathbb{T}'X} = \lbag t \rbag_E.$$

By definition of $\lbag - \rbag_E$, this implies $s \equiv'_E t$ which in turn means $X \vdash s = t$ belongs to $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$. $\square$

[66] We defined ι precisely to have $\lbag \sigma(x) \rbag_E = \iota(x)$. To show $\sigma^* = \eta^{\Sigma\,*}_X$ is the identity, use (33) and the fact that $\mu^\Sigma \cdot \eta^\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma = \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma}$ (it holds by definition (4)).

Note that because $\mathbb{T}X$ and $\mathbb{T}'X$ were defined in the same way in terms of $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$ and $\mathfrak{Th}'(E)$ respectively, and since we have proven the latter to be equal, we obtain that $\mathbb{T}X$ and $\mathbb{T}'X$ are the same algebra. In the sequel, we will work with $\mathbb{T}X$ mostly but we may use the fact that $s \equiv_E t$ if and only if there is a derivation of $X \vdash s = t$ in equational logic.

Remark 47. We have used the axiom of choice twice in proving completeness of equational logic. That is only an artifact of our presentation that deals with arbitrary contexts. Since terms are finite and operation symbols have finite arities, we can make do with only finite contexts (which removes the need for choice). Formally, one can prove by induction on the derivation that a proof of $X \vdash s = t$ can be transformed into a proof of $\mathrm{FV}\{s,t\} \vdash s = t$ which uses only equations with finite contexts.[67] You can also verify semantically that $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $X \vdash s = t$ if and only if it satisfies $\mathrm{FV}\{s,t\} \vdash s = t$ essentially because the extra variables have no effect on the quantification of the free variables in s and t nor on the interpretation.

[67] We denoted by $\mathrm{FV}\{s,t\}$ the set of **free variables** used in s and t. This can be defined inductively as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{FV}\{\eta_X^\Sigma(x)\} &= \{x\} \\ \mathrm{FV}\{\mathsf{op}(t_1,\dots,t_n)\} &= \mathrm{FV}\{t_1\} \cup \cdots \cup \mathrm{FV}\{t_n\} \\ \mathrm{FV}\{t_1,\dots,t_n\} &= \mathrm{FV}\{t_1\} \cup \cdots \cup \mathrm{FV}\{t_n\}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that $\mathrm{FV}\{-\}$ applied to a finite set of terms is always finite.

We mention now two related results for the sake of comparison when we introduce quantitative equational logic. For any set X and variable y, the following rules are derivable in equational logic.

$$\frac{X \vdash s = t}{X \cup \{y\} \vdash s = t}\ \textsc{Add} \qquad\qquad \frac{X \vdash s = t \qquad y \notin \mathrm{FV}\{s,t\}}{X \setminus \{y\} \vdash s = t}\ \textsc{Del}$$

In words, Add says that you can always add a variable to the context, and Del says you can remove a variable from the context when it is not used in the terms of the equations. Both these rules are instances of Sub. For the first, take σ to be the inclusion of X in $X \cup \{y\}$ (it may be the identity if $y \in X$). For the second, let σ send y to whatever element of $X \setminus \{y\}$ and all the other elements of X to themselves[68], then since y is not in the free variables of s and t, $\sigma^*(s) = s$ and $\sigma^*(t) = t$.

[68] When X is empty, the equations on the top and bottom of Del coincide, so the rule is clearly derivable.

1.4 Monads

Definition 48 (Monad)**.** A **monad** on a category $\mathbf{C}$ is a triple (M, η, μ) comprised of an endofunctor $M : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{C}$ and two natural transformations $\eta : \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{C}} \Rightarrow M$ and $\mu : M^2 \Rightarrow M$ called the **unit** and **multiplication** respectively that make (38) and (39) commute in $[\mathbf{C}, \mathbf{C}]$.[69]

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} M & \xrightarrow{M\eta} & M^2 & \xleftarrow{\eta M} & M \\ & \searrow^{\mathbb{1}_M} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\mu} & \swarrow^{\mathbb{1}_M} & \\ & & M & & \end{array} \qquad (38) \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{ccc} M^3 & \xrightarrow{\mu M} & M^2 \\ {\scriptstyle M\mu}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\mu} \\ M^2 & \xrightarrow[\mu]{} & M \end{array} \qquad (39)$$

[69] In equations, ie means for any object $A \in \mathbf{C}_0$, $\mu_A \circ M\eta_A = \mathrm{id}_A$, $\mu_A \circ \eta_{MA} = \mathrm{id}_A$, and $\mu_A \circ \mu_{MA} = \mu_A \circ M\mu_A$.

In this chapter we will mostly talk about monads on **Set**, but it is good to keep some arguments general for later. Here are some very important examples (for the literature and especially for this manuscript).

Example 49 (Maybe)**.** Suppose $\mathbf{C}$ has (binary) coproducts and a terminal object $\mathbf{1}$, then $(- + \mathbf{1}) : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{C}$ is a monad. It is called the **maybe monad**. We write inl^{X+Y}

(resp. inr^{X+Y}) for the coprojection of X (resp. Y) into $X+Y$.[70] First, note that for a morphism $f : X \to Y$,

$$f + \mathbf{1} = [\mathsf{inl}^{Y+\mathbf{1}} \circ f, \mathsf{inr}^{Y+\mathbf{1}}] : X + \mathbf{1} \to Y + \mathbf{1}.$$

The components of the unit are given by the coprojections, i.e. $\eta_X = \mathsf{inl}^{X+\mathbf{1}} : X \to X + \mathbf{1}$, and the components of the multiplication are

$$\mu_X = [\mathsf{inl}^{X+\mathbf{1}}, \mathsf{inr}^{X+\mathbf{1}}, \mathsf{inr}^{X+\mathbf{1}}] : X + \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{1} \to X + \mathbf{1}.$$

Checking that (38) and (39) commute is an exercise in reasoning with coproducts. It is much more interesting to give the intuition in **Set** where $+$ is the disjoint union and $\mathbf{1}$ is the singleton $\{*\}$:[71]

- $X + \mathbf{1}$ is the set X with an additional (fresh) element $*$,
- the function $f + \mathbf{1}$ acts like f on X and sends the new element $* \in X$ to the new element $* \in Y$,
- the unit $\eta_X : X \to X + \mathbf{1}$ is the injection (sending $x \in X$ to itself),
- the multiplication μ_X acts like the identity on X and sends the two new elements of $X + \mathbf{1} + \mathbf{1}$ to the single new element $X + \mathbf{1}$,
- one can check (38) and (39) commute by hand because (briefly) $x \in X$ is always sent to $x \in X$ and $*$ is always sent to $*$.

[70] These notations are very common in the community of programming language research, they stand for *injection left* (resp. *right*). We may omit the superscript in case it is too cumbersome.

[71] This intuition should carry over well to many categories where the coproduct and terminal objects have similar behaviors.

Example 50 (Powerset)**.** The covariant **non-empty finite powerset** functor $\mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}} : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ sends a set X to the set of non-empty finite subsets of X which we denote by $\mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}X$. It acts on functions just like the usual powerset functor, i.e. given a function $f : X \to Y$, $\mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}f$ is the direct image function, it sends $S \subseteq X$ to $f(S) = \{f(x) \mid x \in S\}$.[72]

One can show $\mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}$ is a monad with the following unit and multiplication:

$$\eta_X : X \to \mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}(X) = x \mapsto \{x\} \text{ and } \mu_X : \mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}(\mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}(X)) \to \mathcal{P}_{\mathsf{ne}}(X) = F \mapsto \bigcup_{s \in F} s.$$

[72] It is clear that $f(S)$ is non-empty and finite when S is non-empty and finite.

Example 51 (Distributions)**.** The functor $\mathcal{D} : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ sends a set X to the set of **finitely supported distributions** on X:[73]

$$\mathcal{D}(X) := \{\varphi : X \to [0,1] \mid \sum_{x \in X} \varphi(x) = 1 \text{ and } \varphi(x) \neq 0 \text{ for finitely many } x\text{'s}\}.$$

We call $\varphi(x)$ the **weight** of φ at x, and let $\mathrm{supp}(\varphi)$ denote the **support** of φ, that is, $\mathrm{supp}(\varphi)$ contains all the elements $x \in X$ such that $\varphi(x) \neq 0$. On morphisms, $\mathcal{D}$ sends a function $f : X \to Y$ to the function between sets of distributions defined by

$$\mathcal{D}f : \mathcal{D}X \to \mathcal{D}Y = \varphi \mapsto \left(y \mapsto \sum_{x \in X, f(x) = y} \varphi(x) \right).$$

[73] We will simply call them distributions.

In words, the weight of $\mathcal{D}f(\varphi)$ at y is equal to the total weight of φ on the preimage of y under f.

One can show that $\mathcal{D}$ is a monad with unit $\eta_X = x \mapsto \delta_x$, where δ_x is the **Dirac** distribution at x (the weight of δ_x is 1 at x and 0 everywhere else), and multiplication

$$\mu_X = \Phi \mapsto \left(x \mapsto \sum_{\varphi \in \mathrm{supp}(\Phi)} \Phi(\varphi)\varphi(x) \right).$$

In words, the weight $\mu_X(\Phi)$ at x is the average weight at x of distributions in the support of Φ.

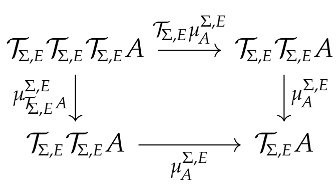
Monads have historically been the prevailing categorical approach to universal algebra.[74] This is due to a result of Linton [Lin66] stating that any algebraic theory gives rise to a monad. Given a signature Σ and a set E of equations, the monad Linton constructed is $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$.

[74] Although this has been changing, in part due to [HP07] (and the articles leading to that paper, e.g. [PP01, HPP06]) where the authors argue for using Lawvere theories instead.

Proposition 52. *The functor $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} : \mathbf{Set} \to \mathbf{Set}$ defines a monad on* **Set** *with unit $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ and multiplication $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$. We call it the* ***term monad*** *for (Σ, E).*

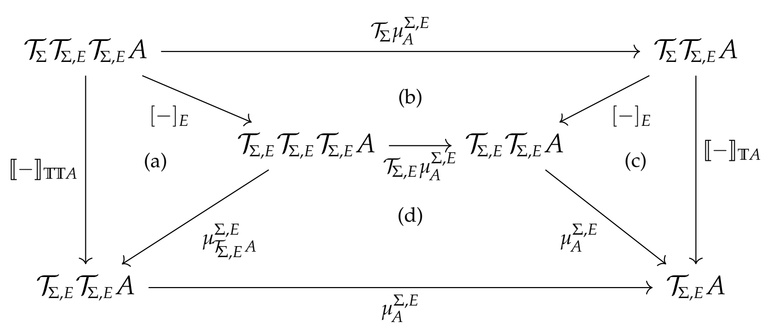
Proof. We have done most of the work already.[75] We showed that $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ and $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$ are natural transformations of the right type in Footnote 50 and Proposition 27 respectively, and we showed the appropriate instance of (38) commutes in Lemma 32. It remains to prove (39) commutes which, instantiated here, means proving the following diagram commutes for every set A.

[75] In fact, we have done it twice because we showed that $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$ is the free (Σ, E)-algebra on A for every set A, and that automatically yields (through abstract categorical arguments) a monad sending A to the carrier of $\mathbb{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$, i.e. $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A$.



It follows from the following paved diagram.[76]

[76] We know that (a), (b) and (c) commute by (25), (20), and (25) respectively. This means that (d) precomposed by the epimorphism $[-]_E$ yields the outer square. Moreover, we know the outer square commutes by (30), therefore, (d) must also commute.



Note that when E is empty, we get a monad $(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma, \eta^\Sigma, \mu^\Sigma)$.[77] □

[77] Here is an alternative proof that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is a monad. We showed η^Σ and μ^Σ are natural in (3) and (5) respectively. The right triangle of (38) commutes by definition of μ^Σ (4), the left triangle commutes by Lemma 9, and the square (39) commutes by (13).

It makes sense now to ask to go in the other direction, namely, given a monad, how do we obtain a signature and a set of equations? First, just like (Σ, E)-algebras are models of the theory (Σ, E), we can define models for a monad, which we also call algebras.

Definition 53 (M–algebra)**.** Let (M, η, μ) be a monad on $\mathbf{C}$, an M**-algebra** is a pair (A, α) comprising an object $A \in \mathbf{C}_0$ and a morphism $\alpha : MA \to A$ such that (40) and (41) commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\eta_A} & MA \\ & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}_A} & \downarrow \alpha \\ & & A \end{array} \qquad (40) \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{ccc} MMA & \xrightarrow{\mu_A} & MA \\ {\scriptstyle M\alpha}\downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \alpha} \\ MA & \xrightarrow[\alpha]{} & A \end{array} \qquad (41)$$

We call A the carrier and we may write only α to refer to an M-algebra.

Definition 54 (Homomorphism)**.** Let (M, η, μ) be a monad and (A, α) and (B, β) be two M-algebras. An M-algebra **homomorphism** or simply M-homomorphism from α to β is a morphism $h : A \to B$ in $\mathbf{C}$ making (42) commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} MA & \xrightarrow{Mh} & MB \\ {\scriptstyle \alpha}\downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \beta} \\ A & \xrightarrow[h]{} & B \end{array} \qquad (42)$$

The composition of two M-homomorphisms is an M-homomorphism and id_A is an M-homomorphism from (A, α) to itself whenever α is an M-algebra, thus we get a category of M-algebras and M-homomorphisms called the **Eilenberg–Moore category** of M and denoted by $\mathbf{EM}(M)$.[78]

Since $\mathbf{EM}(M)$ was built from objects and morphisms in $\mathbf{C}$, there is an obvious forgetful functor $U^M : \mathbf{EM}(M) \to \mathbf{C}$ sending an M-algebra (A, α) to its carrier A and an M-homomorphism to its underlying morphism.

[78] Named after the authors of the article introducing that category [EM65].

Example 55. We will see some more concrete examples in a bit, but we can mention now that the similarities between the squares in the definitions of a monad (39), of an algebra (41), and of a homomorphism (42) have a profound consquences. First, for any A, the pair (MA, μ_A) is an M-algebra because (43) and (44) commute by the properties of a monad.[79]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} MA & \xrightarrow{\eta_{MA}} & MMA \\ & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}_{MA}} & \downarrow \mu_A \\ & & MA \end{array} \qquad (43) \qquad\qquad \begin{array}{ccc} MMMA & \xrightarrow{\mu_{MA}} & MMA \\ {\scriptstyle M\mu_A}\downarrow & & \downarrow {\scriptstyle \mu_A} \\ MMA & \xrightarrow[\mu_A]{} & MA \end{array} \qquad (44)$$

Furthermore, for any M-algebra $\alpha : MA \to A$, (41) (reflected through the diagonal) precisely says that α is a M-homomorphism from (MA, μ_A) to (A, α). After a bit more work[80] we conclude that (MA, μ_A) is the free M-algebra (with respect to $U^M : \mathbf{EM}(M) \to \mathbf{Set}$).

[79] Explicitly, (43) is the component at A of the right triangle in (38), and (44) is the component at A of (39).

[80] Given an M-algebra (A', α') and a function $f : A \to A'$, we can show $\alpha' \circ Mf$ is the unique M-homomorphism such that $\alpha' \circ Mf \circ \eta_A = f$.

The terminology suggests that (Σ, E)-algebras and $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$-algebras are the same thing.[81] Let us check this.

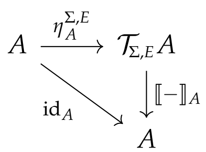
[81] Also, Example 55 starts to confirm this if we compare it with Remark 16, and Lemma 17.

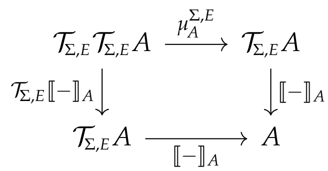
Proposition 56. *There is an isomorphism* $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E) \cong \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E})$.

Proof. Given a (Σ, E)-algebra $\mathbb{A}$, we already explained in (29) how to obtain a function $[\![-]\!]_A : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A \to A$ which sends $[t]_E$ to the interpretation of the term t under the trivial assignment $\eta^\Sigma_A : A \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$.[82] Let us verify that $[\![-]\!]_A$ is a $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$-

[82] That is well-defined because $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies all the equations in $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$.

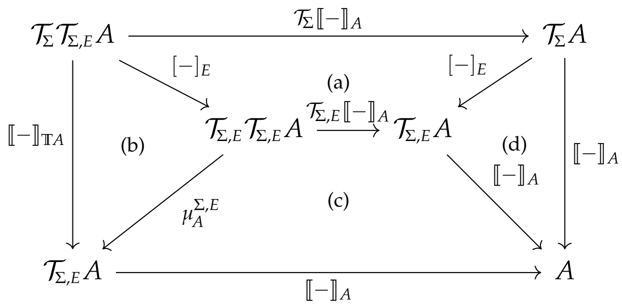
algebra. We need to show the following instances of (40) and (41) commutes.





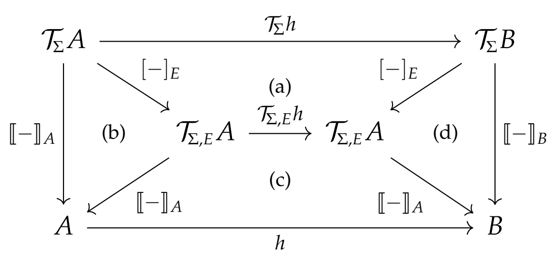
The triangle commutes by definitions,[83] and the square commutes by the following.

[83] We have $[\![\eta_A^{\Sigma,E}(a)]\!]_A = [\![[a]_E]\!]_A = [\![a]\!]_A = a$.



Since the outer rectangle commutes by Lemma 28, (a) commutes by naturality of $[-]_E$ (20), (b) commutes by definition of $\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}$ (25), and (d) commutes by (29), we can conclude that (c) commutes because $[-]_E$ is epic.

We also already explained in Footnote 15 that any homomorphism $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ makes the outer square below commutes.



Since (a), (b), and (d) commute by naturality of $[-]_E$, (29), and (29) respectively, we conclude that (c) commutes again because $[-]_E$ is epic. This means h is a $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$-homomorphism.

We obtain a functor[84] $P : \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E) \to \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E})$ sending $\mathbb{A} = (A, [\![-]\!]_A)$ to $(A, \alpha_{\mathbb{A}})$ where $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}} = [\![-]\!]_A : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A \to A$ (we give it a different name to make the sequel easier to follow).

[84] Checking functoriality is trivial because P acts like the identity on morphisms.

In the other direction, given an algebra $\alpha : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}A \to A$, we define an algebra $\mathbb{A}_\alpha$ with the interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ given by

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_\alpha(a_1, \dots, a_n) = \alpha[\mathsf{op}(a_1, \dots, a_n)]_E, \tag{45}$$

and we can prove by induction that $[\![t]\!]_\alpha = \alpha[t]_E$ for any Σ-term t over A (note that we use the $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$-algebra properties of α).[85] Now, if $h : (A, \alpha) \to (B, \beta)$ is a $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$-homomorphism, then h is a homomorphism from $\mathbb{A}_\alpha$ to $\mathbb{B}_\beta$ because for any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ and $a_1, \dots, a_n \in A$, we have

$$h([\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_\alpha(a_1, \dots, a_n)) = h(\alpha[\mathsf{op}(a_1, \dots, a_n)]_E) \qquad \text{by (45)}$$

[85] For the base case, we have

$$[\![a]\!]_\alpha \overset{(6)}{=} a \overset{(40)}{=} \alpha[\eta_A^\Sigma(a)]_E = \alpha[a]_E.$$

For the inductive step, let $t = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n) \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A$:

$$\begin{aligned}
[\![t]\!]_\alpha &= [\![\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]\!]_\alpha \\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_\alpha([\![t_1]\!]_\alpha, \dots, [\![t_n]\!]_\alpha) && (6) \\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_\alpha(\alpha[t_1]_E, \dots, \alpha[t_n]_E) && \text{I.H.} \\
&= \alpha[\mathsf{op}(\alpha[t_1]_E, \dots, \alpha[t_n]_E)]_E && (45) \\
&= \alpha[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\alpha(\mathsf{op}([t_1]_E, \dots, [t_n]_E))]_E && (2) \\
&= \alpha(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\alpha[\mathsf{op}([t_1]_E, \dots, [t_n]_E)]_E) && (20) \\
&= \alpha(\mu_A^{\Sigma,E}[\mathsf{op}([t_1]_E, \dots, [t_n]_E)]_E) && (40) \\
&= \alpha[\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]_E && (25) \\
&= \alpha[t]_E.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \beta(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} h[\mathsf{op}(a_1,\dots,a_n)]_E) && \text{by (42)}\\
&= \beta[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma h(\mathsf{op}(a_1,\dots,a_n))]_E && \text{by (20)}\\
&= \beta[\mathsf{op}(h(a_1),\dots,h(a_n))]_E && \text{by (2)}\\
&= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_\beta(h(a_1),\dots,h(a_n)). && \text{by (45)}
\end{aligned}$$

We obtain a functor $P^{-1} : \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}) \to \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ sending (A, α) to $\mathbb{A}_\alpha$.

Finally, we need to check that P and P^{-1} are inverses to each other, i.e. that $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}_\alpha} = \alpha$ and $\mathbb{A}_{\alpha_\mathbb{A}} = \mathbb{A}$. For the former, $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}_\alpha}$ is defined to be the interpretation $[\![-]\!]_\alpha$ extended to terms modulo E, which we showed in Footnote 85 acts just like α. For the latter, we need to show that $[\![-]\!]_{\alpha_\mathbb{A}}$ and $[\![-]\!]_A$ coincide. Using Footnote 85 for the first equation and the definition of $\alpha_\mathbb{A}$ for the second, we have

$$[\![t]\!]_{\alpha_\mathbb{A}} = \alpha_\mathbb{A}[t]_E = [\![t]\!]_A.$$

We conclude P and P^{-1} are inverses, thus $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E)$ and $\mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E})$ are isomorphic.[86] □

[86] Observe that the functors P and P^{-1} commute with the forgetful functors because they do not change the carriers of the algebras.

What about algebras for other monads? Are they algebras for some signature Σ and equations E.

Example 57 (Maybe)**.** In **Set**, a $(- + \mathbf{1})$-algebra is a function $\alpha : A + \mathbf{1} \to A$ making the following diagrams commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\eta_A} & A+\mathbf{1}\\
& \searrow^{\mathrm{id}_A} & \downarrow \alpha\\
& & A
\end{array}
\qquad\qquad
\begin{array}{ccc}
A+\mathbf{1}+\mathbf{1} & \xrightarrow{\mu_A} & A+\mathbf{1}\\
\downarrow \alpha+\mathbf{1} & & \downarrow \alpha\\
A+\mathbf{1} & \xrightarrow[\alpha]{} & A
\end{array}$$

Reminding ourselves that η_A is the inclusion in the left component, the triangle commuting enforces α to act like the identity function on all of A. We can also write $\alpha = [\mathrm{id}_A, \alpha(*)]$.[87] The square commuting ads no additional constraint. Thus, an algebra for the maybe monad on **Set** is just a set with a distinguished point. Let $h : A \to B$ be a function, commutativity of (46) is equivalent to $h(\alpha(*)) = \beta(*)$. Hence, a $(- + \mathbf{1})$-homomorphism is a function that preserves the distinguished point.

[87] We identify the element $\alpha(*) \in A$ with the function $\alpha(*) : \mathbf{1} \to A$ picking out that element.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
A+\mathbf{1} & \xrightarrow{h+\mathbf{1}} & B+\mathbf{1}\\
\downarrow [\mathrm{id}_A,\alpha(*)] & & \downarrow [\mathrm{id}_B,\beta(*)]\\
A & \xrightarrow[h]{} & B
\end{array} \qquad (46)$$

Seeing the distinguished point of a $(- + \mathbf{1})$-algebra as the interpretation of a constant, we recognize that the category $\mathbf{EM}(- + \mathbf{1})$ is isomorphic to the category $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ where $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$ contains a single constant.

An other option to recognize $\mathbf{EM}(- + \mathbf{1})$ as a category of algebras is via monad isomorphisms.

Definition 58 (Monad morphism)**.** Let (M, η^M, μ^M) and (N, η^N, μ^N) be two monads on $\mathbf{C}$. A **monad morphism** from M to N is a natural transformation $\rho : M \Rightarrow N$ making (47) and (48) commute.[88]

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{id}_\mathbf{C} & & \\
\downarrow \eta^M & \searrow^{\eta^N} & \\
M & \xrightarrow[\rho]{} & N
\end{array} \qquad (47)
\qquad\qquad
\begin{array}{ccc}
MM & \xrightarrow{\rho\diamond\rho} & NN\\
\downarrow \mu^M & & \downarrow \mu^N\\
M & \xrightarrow[\rho]{} & N
\end{array} \qquad (48)$$

[88] Recall that $\rho \diamond \rho$ denotes the horizontal composition of ρ with itself, i.e.

$$\rho \diamond \rho = \rho N \cdot M\rho = N\rho \cdot \rho M.$$

As expected ρ is called a monad isomorphism when there is a monad morphism $\rho^{-1} : N \Rightarrow M$ satisfying $\rho \cdot \rho^{-1} = \mathbb{1}_N$ and $\rho^{-1} \cdot \rho = \mathbb{1}_M$. In fact, it is enough that all the components of ρ are isomorphisms in $\mathbf{C}$ to guarantee ρ is a monad isomorphism.[89]

[89] One checks that natural isomorphisms are precisely the natural transformations whose components are all isomorphisms, and that the inverse of a monad morphism is automatically a monad morphism.

Example 59. For the signature $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$, the term monad $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is isomorphic to $- + \mathbf{1}$. Indeed, recall that a Σ-term over A is either an element of A or p, this yields a bijection $\rho_A : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A + \mathbf{1}$ that sends any element of A to itself and p to $* \in \mathbf{1}$. To verify that ρ is a monad morphism, we check these diagrams commute.[90]

[90] All of them commute essentially because ρ_A and both multiplications act like the identity on A.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\rho_A} & A+\mathbf{1} \\ {\scriptstyle \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle f+\mathbf{1}} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma B & \xrightarrow[\rho_B]{} & B+\mathbf{1} \end{array} \quad (49) \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} A & & \\ {\scriptstyle \eta^\Sigma_A}\big\downarrow & \searrow^{\eta_A} & \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[\rho_A]{} & A+\mathbf{1} \end{array} \quad (50) \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow{\rho_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A}\circ(\rho_A+\mathbf{1})} & A+\mathbf{1}+\mathbf{1} \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_A}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mu_A} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \xrightarrow[\rho_A]{} & A+\mathbf{1} \end{array} \quad (51)$$

We obtained a monad isomorphism between the maybe monad and the term monad for the signature Σ with only a constant. We can recover the isomorphism between the categories of algebras $\mathbf{EM}(- + \mathbf{1})$ and $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ from Example 57 with the following result.

Proposition 60. *If $\rho : M \Rightarrow N$ is a monad morphism, then there is a functor $-\rho : \mathbf{EM}(N) \to \mathbf{EM}(M)$. If ρ is a monad isomorphism, then $-\rho$ is also an isomorphism.*

Proof. Given an N-algebra $\alpha : NA \to A$, we show that $\alpha \circ \rho_A : MA \to A$ is an M-algebra by paving the following diagrams.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{\eta^M_A} & MA \\ & \searrow^{\eta^N_A}\ \text{(a)} & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_A} \\ {\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}_A}\ \searrow & \text{(b)} & NA \\ & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \alpha} \\ & & A \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} MMA & & \xrightarrow{\mu^M_A} & & MA \\ {\scriptstyle M\rho_A}\big\downarrow & & \text{(c)} & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_A} \\ MNA & \xrightarrow{\rho_{NA}} & NNA & \xrightarrow{\mu^N_A} & NA \\ {\scriptstyle M\alpha}\big\downarrow & \text{(d)} & {\scriptstyle N\alpha}\big\downarrow & \text{(e)} & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \alpha} \\ MA & \xrightarrow[\rho_A]{} & NA & \xrightarrow[\alpha]{} & A \end{array} \quad (52)$$

Showing (52) commutes:

(a) By (47).

(b) By (40) for $\alpha : NA \to A$.

(c) By (48), noting that $(\rho \diamond \rho)_A = \rho_{NA} \circ M\rho_A$.

(d) Naturality of ρ.

(e) By (41) for $\alpha : NA \to A$.

Moreover, if $h : A \to B$ is an N-homomorphism from α to β, then it is also a M-homomorphism from $\alpha \circ \rho_A$ to $\beta \circ \rho_B$ by the paving below.[91]

[91] The top square commutes by naturality of ρ and the bottom square commutes because h is an N-homomorphism (42).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} MA & \xrightarrow{Mh} & MB \\ {\scriptstyle \rho_A}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_B} \\ NA & \xrightarrow[Nh]{} & NB \\ {\scriptstyle \alpha}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \beta} \\ A & \xrightarrow[h]{} & B \end{array}$$

We obtain a functor $-\rho : \mathbf{EM}(N) \to \mathbf{EM}(M)$ taking an algebra (A, α) to $(A, \alpha \circ \rho_A)$ and a homomorphism $h : (A, \alpha) \to (B, \beta)$ to $h : (A, \alpha \circ \rho_A) \to (B, \beta \circ \rho_B)$.

Furthermore, it is easy to see that $-\rho = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{EM}(M)}$ when $\rho = \mathbb{1}_M$ is the identity monad morphism, and that for any other monad morphism $\rho' : N \Rightarrow L$, $-(\rho' \cdot \rho) =$

$(-\rho) \circ (-\rho')$.[92] Thus, when ρ is a monad isomorphism with inverse ρ^{-1}, $-\rho^{-1}$ is the inverse of $-\rho$, so $-\rho$ is an isomorphism. □

[92] In other words, the assignments $M \mapsto \mathbf{EM}(M)$ and $\rho \mapsto -\rho$ becomes a functor from the category of monads on $\mathbf{C}$ and monad morphisms to the category of categories.

With the monad isomorphism $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \cong - + \mathbf{1}$ of Example 59, we obtain an isomorphism $\mathbf{EM}(- + \mathbf{1}) \cong \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma)$, and composing it with the isomorphism of Proposition 56 (instantiating $E = \emptyset$), we get back the result from Example 57 that algebras for the maybe monad are the same thing as algebras for the signature with only a constant.

This motivates the following definition.

Definition 61 (**Set** presentation)**.** Let M be a monad on **Set**, an **algebraic presentation** of M is signature Σ and a set of equations E along with a monad isomorphism $\rho : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \cong M$. We also say M is presented by (Σ, E).

We have proven in Example 59 that $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p} : 0\}$ and $E = \emptyset$ is an algebraic presentation for the maybe monad on **Set**. Here is a couple of additional examples.

Example 62 (Powerset)**.** The powerset monad $\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{ne}}$ is presented by the theory of **semilattices** $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}, E_{\mathbf{SLat}})$,[93] where $\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}} = \{\oplus : 2\}$ and $E_{\mathbf{SLat}}$ contains the following equations stating that $\oplus$ is idempotent, commutative and associative resepctively.

$$x \vdash x = x \oplus x \qquad x, y \vdash x \oplus y = y \oplus x \qquad x, y, z \vdash x \oplus (y \oplus z) = (x \oplus y) \oplus z$$

In order to show this, we exhibit a monad isomorphism $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}, E_{\mathbf{SLat}}} \cong \mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{ne}}$.

Another thing we obtain from this isomorphism is that for any set X, interpreting $\oplus$ as union on $\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{ne}} X$ (i.e. $(S, T) \mapsto S \cup T$) yields the free semilattice on X.

[93] Usually, when we say "theory of X", we mean that Xs are the algebras for that theory. For instance, semilattices are the $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}, E_{\mathbf{SLat}})$-algebras. After some unrolling, we get the more common definition of a semilattice, that is, a set with a binary operation that is idempotent, commutative, and associative.

Example 63 (Distributions)**.** The distribution monad $\mathcal{D}$ is presented by the theory of **convex algebras** $(\Sigma_{\mathbf{CA}}, E_{\mathbf{CA}})$ where $\Sigma_{\mathbf{CA}} = \{+_p : 2 \mid p \in (0,1)\}$ and $E_{\mathbf{CA}}$ contains the following equations for all $p, q \in (0,1)$.

$$x \vdash x = x +_p x \qquad x, y \vdash x +_p y = y +_{1-p} x$$
$$x, y, z \vdash (x +_p y) +_q z = x +_{pq} + (y +_{\frac{p(1-q)}{1-pq}} z)$$

...

Remark 64. Not all monads on **Set** have an algebraic presentation. Linton also gave in [Lin66] a characterization of which monads can be presented by a signature with finitary operation symbols, such monads are aptly called **finitary monads**.

In Chapter 3, we will need to relate monads on different categories, we give a some background on that here.

Definition 65 (Monad functor)**.** Let (M, η^M, μ^M) be a monad on $\mathbf{C}$, and (T, η^T, μ^T) be a monad on $\mathbf{D}$. A **monad functor** from M to T is a pair (F, λ) comprising a functor $F : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{D}$, and a natural transformation $\lambda : TF \Rightarrow FM$ making (53) and (54) commute. (Note the similarities with Definition 58.)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F & & \\ {\scriptstyle \eta^T F}\downarrow & \searrow^{F\eta^M} & \\ TF & \xrightarrow[\lambda]{} & FM \end{array} \qquad (53)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} TTF & \xrightarrow{T\lambda} & TFM & \xrightarrow{\lambda M} & FMM \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^T F}\downarrow & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F\mu^M} \\ TF & & \xrightarrow[\lambda]{} & & FM \end{array} \qquad (54)$$

Proposition 66. *If $(F, \lambda) : M \to T$ is a monad functor, then there is a functor $F - \circ\lambda$: $\mathbf{EM}(M) \to \mathbf{EM}(T)$ sending an M-algebra $\alpha : MA \to A$ to $F\alpha \circ \lambda_A : TFA \to A$, and an M-homomorphism $h : A \to B$ to $Fh : FA \to FB$.*[94]

Proof. We need to show that $F\alpha \circ \lambda$ is a T-algebra. We pave the following diagrams showing (40) and (41) commute respecitvely.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} FA & \xrightarrow{\eta^T_{FA}} & TFA \\ & \searrow^{F\eta^M_A}\ \text{(a)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \lambda_A} \\ & \text{id}_{FA}\ \text{(b)} & FMA \\ & \searrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F\alpha} \\ & & FA \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccccc} TTFA & & \xrightarrow{\quad\mu^T_{FA}\quad} & & TFA \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle T\lambda_A} & & \text{(c)} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \lambda_A} \\ TFMA & \xrightarrow{\lambda_{MA}} & FMMA & \xrightarrow{F\mu^M_A} & FMA \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle TF\alpha} & \text{(d)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle FM\alpha} & \text{(e)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F\alpha} \\ TFA & \xrightarrow[\lambda_A]{} & FMA & \xrightarrow[F\alpha]{} & FA \end{array} \tag{56}$$

Next, we need to show that when $h : A \to B$ is an M-homomorphism from α to β, then Fh is a T-homomorphism from $F\alpha \circ \lambda_A$ to $F\alpha \circ \lambda_B$. We pave the following diagram where (a) commutes by naturality of λ and (b) by applying F to (42).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} TFA & \xrightarrow{TFh} & TFB \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle \lambda_A} & \text{(a)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \lambda_B} \\ FMA & \xrightarrow{FMh} & FMB \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle F\alpha} & \text{(b)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle F\beta} \\ FA & \xrightarrow[Fh]{} & FB \end{array}$$

□

There are two special cases of monad functors. When M and T are on the same category $\mathbf{C}$ and $F = \text{id}_{\mathbf{C}}$, a monad functor is just a monad morphism,[95] and then the proof above reduces to the proof of Proposition 60. When λ_A is an identity morphism for every A, i.e. $TF = FM$, we say that M is a monad lifting of T along F. That notion is central to §3.4, where we redefine it in an even more specific setting.

[94] By definition, the functor $F - \circ\lambda$ lifts F along the forgetful functors, namely, it makes (55) commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{EM}(M) & \xrightarrow{F-\circ\lambda} & \mathbf{EM}(T) \\ \downarrow{\scriptstyle U^M} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle U^T} \\ \mathbf{C} & \xrightarrow[F]{} & \mathbf{D} \end{array} \tag{55}$$

Showing (56) commutes:

(a) By (53).

(b) Apply F to (40).

(c) By (54).

(d) Naturality of λ.

(e) Apply F to (41).

[95] Sometimes, authors introduce monad functors with the name monad morphism or monad map, and take our notion of monad morphism as a particular instance. I keep the distinction here because of the frequent usage of monad morphisms as in Definition 58 in the adjacent literature.

2 Generalized Metric Spaces

The Homeless Wanderer

Emahoy Tsegué-Maryam Guèbrou

2.1 L-Spaces

Definition 67 (Complete lattice)**.** A **complete lattice** is a partially ordered set $(\mathsf{L}, \leq)$[96] where all subsets $S \subseteq \mathsf{L}$ have a infimum and a supremum denoted by $\inf S$ and $\sup S$ respectively. In particular, L has a **bottom element** $\bot = \sup \emptyset$ and a **top element** $\top = \inf \emptyset$ that satisfy $\bot \leq \varepsilon \leq \top$ for all $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$. We use L to refer to the lattice and its underlying set.

[96] i.e. L is a set and $\leq \subseteq \mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{L}$ is a binary relation on L that is reflexive, transitive and antisymmetric.

Let us describe two central (for this thesis) examples of complete lattices.

Example 68 (Unit interval)**.** The **unit interval** $[0, 1]$ is the set of real numbers between 0 and 1. It is a poset with the usual order $\leq$ ("less than or equal") on numbers. It is usually an axiom in the definition of $\mathbb{R}$[97] that all non-empty bounded subsets of real numbers have an infimum and a supremum. Since all subsets of $[0, 1]$ are bounded (by 0 and 1), we conclude that $([0, 1], \leq)$ is a complete lattice with $\bot = 0$ and $\top = 1$.

[97] Or possibly a theorem proven after constructing $\mathbb{R}$.

Later in this section, we will see elements of $[0, 1]$ as distances between points of some space. It would make sense, then, to extend the interval to contain values bigger than 1. Still because a complete lattice must have a top element there must be a number above all others. We could either stop at some arbitrary $0 \leq B \in \mathbb{R}$ and consider $[0, B]$, or we can consider ∞ to be a number as done below.[98]

[98] If one needs negative distances, it is also possible to work with any interval $[A, B]$ with $A \leq B \in \mathbb{R}$, or even $[-\infty, \infty]$. We will stick to $[0, 1]$ and $[0, \infty]$.

Example 69 (Extended interval)**.** Similarly to the unit interval, the **extended interval** is the set $[0, \infty]$ of positive real numbers extended with ∞, and it is a poset after asserting $\varepsilon \leq \infty$ for all $\varepsilon \in [0, \infty]$. It is also a complete lattice because non-empty bounded subsets of $[0, \infty)$ still have an infimum and supremum, and if a subset is not bounded above or contains ∞, then its supremum is ∞. We find that 0 is bottom and ∞ is top.

It is the prevailing custom to consider distances valued in the extended interval.[99] However, in our research, we preferred to use the unit interval for a very subtle and

[99] In fact, $[0, \infty]$ is also famous under the name *Lawvere quantale* because of Lawvere's seminal paper [Law02]. In that work, he used some structure on $[0, \infty]$ (now called a quantale) to give a categorical definition very close to that of a metric, the most accepted abstract notion of distance.

inconsequential reason (explained in **??**), and that is why most examples will have distances valued in $[0, 1]$.

There are many other interesting complete lattices, although (unfortunately) they are rarely viewed as possible places to value distances.

Example 70 (Booleans)**.** The **Boolean lattice** B is the complete lattice containing only two elements, bottom and top. Its name comes from the interpretation of $\bot$ as a `false` value and $\top$ as a `true` value which makes the infimum act like an `AND` and the supremum like an `OR`.

Example 71 (Extended natural numbers)**.** The set $\mathbb{N}_\infty$ of natural numbers extended with ∞ is a sublattice of $[0, \infty]$.[100] Indeed, it is a poset with the usual order and the infimum and supremum of a subset of natural numbers is either itself a natural number of ∞ (when the subset is unbounded).

[100] As expected, a **sublattice** of $(\mathsf{L}, \leq)$ is a set $\mathsf{S} \subseteq \mathsf{L}$ closed under taking infimums and supremums. Note that the top and bottom of S need not coincide with those of L. For instance $[0, 1]$ is a sublattice of $[0, \infty]$, but $\top = 1$ in the former and $\top = \infty$ in the latter.

Example 72 (Powerset lattice)**.** For any set X, we denote the powerset of X by $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The inclusion relation $\subseteq$ between subsets of X makes $\mathcal{P}(X)$ a poset. The infimum of a family of subsets $S_i \subseteq X$ is the intersection $\cap_{i \in I} S_i$, and its supremum is the union $\cup_{i \in I} S_i$. Hence, $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is a complete lattice. The bottom element is $\emptyset$ and the top element is X.

It is well-known that subsets of X correspond to functions $X \to \{\bot, \top\}$.[101] Endowing the two-element set with the complete lattice structure of B is what yields the complete lattice structure on $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The following example generalizes this construction.

[101] A subset $S \subseteq X$ is sent to the characteristic function χ_S, and a function $f : X \to \mathsf{B}$ is sent to $f^{-1}(\top)$. We say that $\{\bot, \top\}$ is the subobject classifier of **Set**.

Example 73 (Function space)**.** Given a complete lattice $(\mathsf{L}, \leq)$, for any set X, we denote the set of functions from X to L by L^X. The pointwise order on functions defined by

$$f \leq_* g \iff \forall x \in X, f(x) \leq g(x)$$

is a partial order on L^X. The infimums and supremums of families of functions are also computed pointwise.[102] Namely, given $\{f_i : X \to \mathsf{L}\}_{i \in I}$, for all $x \in X$:

$$(\inf_{i \in I} f_i)(x) = \inf_{i \in I} f_i(x) \quad \text{and} \quad (\sup_{i \in I} f_i)(x) = \sup_{i \in I} f_i(x).$$

This makes L^X a complete lattice. The bottom element is the function that is constant at $\bot$ and the top element is the function that is constant at $\top$.

[102] Taking $\mathsf{L} = \mathsf{B}$, we find that $\mathcal{P}(X)$ and B^X are isomorphic as complete lattices under the usual correspondence. Namely, pointwise infimums and supremums become intersections and unions respectively. For example, if $\chi_S, \chi_T : X \to \mathsf{B}$ are the characteristic functions of $S, T \subseteq X$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \inf \{\chi_S, \chi_T\}(x) = \top &\Leftrightarrow \chi_S(x) = \chi_T(x) = \top \\ &\Leftrightarrow x \in S \text{ and } x \in T \\ &\Leftrightarrow x \in S \cap T. \end{aligned}$$

As a special case of function spaces, it is easy to show that when X is a set with two elements, L^X is isomorphic (as complete lattices) to the product $\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{L}$ as defined below.

Example 74 (Product)**.** Let $(\mathsf{L}, \leq_\mathsf{L})$ and $(\mathsf{K}, \leq_\mathsf{K})$ be two complete lattices. Their **product** is the poset $(\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}, \leq_{\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}})$ on the Cartesian product of L and K with the order defined by

$$(\varepsilon, \delta) \leq_{\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}} (\varepsilon', \delta') \iff \varepsilon \leq_\mathsf{L} \varepsilon' \text{ and } \delta \leq_\mathsf{K} \delta'. \tag{57}$$

It is a complete lattice where the infimums and supremums are computed coordinatewise, namely, for any $S \subseteq \mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}$,[103]

$$\inf S = (\inf\{\pi_{\mathsf{L}}(c) \mid c \in S\}, \inf\{\pi_{\mathsf{K}}(c) \mid c \in S\}) \text{ and}$$
$$\sup S = (\sup\{\pi_{\mathsf{L}}(c) \mid c \in S\}, \sup\{\pi_{\mathsf{K}}(c) \mid c \in S\}).$$

The bottom (resp. top) element of $\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}$ is the pairing of the bottom (resp. top) elements of L and K. i.e. $\bot_{\mathsf{L}\times\mathsf{K}} = (\bot_{\mathsf{L}}, \bot_{\mathsf{K}})$ and $\top_{\mathsf{L}\times\mathsf{K}} = (\top_{\mathsf{L}}, \top_{\mathsf{K}})$.

The following example is also based on functions and it appears in many works on generalized notions of distances, e.g. [Fla97, HR13].

Example 75 (CDF). A **cumulative distribution function**[104] (or CDF for short) is a function $f : [0,\infty] \to [0,1]$ that is monotone (i.e. $\varepsilon \leq \delta \implies f(\varepsilon) \leq f(\delta)$) and satisfies

$$f(\delta) = \sup\{f(\varepsilon) \mid \varepsilon < \delta\}. \tag{58}$$

Intuitively, (58) says that f cannot abruptly change value at some $x \in [0,\infty]$, but it can do that "after" some x.[105] For instance, out of the two functions below, only $f_{>1}$ is a CDF.

$$f_{\geq 1} = x \mapsto \begin{cases} 0 & x < 1 \\ 1 & x \geq 1 \end{cases} \qquad f_{>1} = x \mapsto \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 1 \\ 1 & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

We denote by $\mathsf{CDF}([0,\infty])$ the subset of $[0,1]^{[0,\infty]}$ containing all CDFs, it inherits a poset structure (pointwise ordering), and we can show it is a complete lattice.[106]

Let $\{f_i : [0,\infty] \to [0,1]\}_{i\in I}$ be a family of CDFs. We will show the pointwise supremum $\sup_{i\in I} f_i$ is a CDF, and that is enough since having all supremums implies having all infimums.

- If $\varepsilon \leq \delta$, since all f_is are monotone, we have $f_i(\varepsilon) \leq f_i(\delta)$ for all $i \in I$ which implies
$$(\sup_{i\in I} f_i)(\varepsilon) = \sup_{i\in I} f_i(\varepsilon) \leq \sup_{i\in I} f_i(\delta) = (\sup_{i\in I} f_i)(\delta).$$
- For any $\delta \in [0,\infty]$, we have
$$(\sup_{i\in I} f_i)(\delta) = \sup_{i\in I} f_i(\delta) = \sup_{i\in I}\sup_{\varepsilon<\delta} f_i(\varepsilon) = \sup_{\varepsilon<\delta}\sup_{i\in I} f_i(\varepsilon) = \sup_{\varepsilon<\delta}(\sup_{i\in I} f_i)(\varepsilon).$$

Nothing prevents us from defining CDFs on other domains, and we will write $\mathsf{CDF}(\mathsf{L})$ for the complete lattice of functions $\mathsf{L} \to [0,1]$ that are monotone and satisfy (58). We could also change the codomain, but we will stick to $[0,1]$.

Definition 76 (L-space). Given a complete lattice L and a set X, an L**-relation** on X is a function $d : X \times X \to \mathsf{L}$. We refer to the pair (X, d) as an L**-space**, and we will also use a single bold-face symbol $\mathbf{X}$ to refer to an L-space with underlying set X and L-relation $d_{\mathbf{X}}$.[107] The set X is called the **carrier** or the **underlying** set.

[103] Where π_{L} and π_{K} are the projections from $\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}$ to L and K respectively.

[104] Although cumulative *sub*distribution function might be preferred.

[105] This property is often called *right-continuity*.

[106] Note however that $\mathsf{CDF}([0,\infty])$ is not a sublattice of $[0,1]^{[0,\infty]}$ because the infimums are not always taken pointwise. For instance, given $0 < n \in \mathbb{N}$, define f_n by (see them on Desmos)

$$f_n(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 1 - \frac{1}{n} \\ nx & 1 - \frac{1}{n} < x < 1 \\ 1 & 1 \leq x \end{cases}.$$

The pointwise infimum of $\{f_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{N}}$ clearly sends everything below 1 to 0 and everything above and including 1 to 1, so it does not satisfy $f(1) = \sup_{\varepsilon<1} f(\varepsilon)$. We can find the infimum with the general formula that defines infimums in terms of supremums:

$$\inf_{n>0} f_n = \sup\{f \in \mathsf{CDF}([0,\infty]) \mid \forall n > 0, f \leq_* f_n\}.$$

We find that $\inf_{n>0} f_n = f_{>1}$.

[107] We will often switch between referring to spaces with $\mathbf{X}$ or $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}})$, and we will try to match the symbol for the space and the one for its underlying set only modifying the former with `mathbf`.

A **nonexpansive** map from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{Y}$ is a function $f : X \to Y$ between the underlying sets of $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{Y}$ that satisfies

$$\forall x, x' \in X, \quad d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x'). \tag{59}$$

The identity maps $\mathrm{id}_X : X \to X$ and the composition of two nonexpansive maps are always nonexpansive[108], therefore we have a category whose objects are L-spaces and morphisms are nonexpansive maps. We denote it by $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$.

This category is concrete over **Set** with the forgetful functor $U : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \to \mathbf{Set}$ which sends an L-space $\mathbf{X}$ to its carrier and a morphism to the underlying function between carriers.

[108] Fix three L-spaces $\mathbf{X}$, $\mathbf{Y}$ and $\mathbf{Z}$ with two nonexpansive maps $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$, we have by nonexpansiveness of g then f:

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathbf{Z}}(gf(x), gf(x')) &\leq d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x')) \\ &\leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x'). \end{aligned}$$

Remark 77. In the sequel, we will not distinguish between the morphism $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ and the underlying function $f : X \to Y$. Although, we may write Uf for the latter, when disambiguation is necessary.

Instantiating L for different complete lattices, we can get a feel for what the categories $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ look like. We also give concrete examples of L-spaces.

Examples 78 (Binary relations)**.** When $\mathsf{L} = \mathsf{B}$, a function $d : X \times X \to \mathsf{B}$ is the same thing as a subset of $X \times X$, which is the same thing as a binary relation on X.[109] Then, a B-space is a set equipped with a binary relation, and we choose to have, as a convention, $d(x, y) = \bot$ when x and y are related and $d(x, y) = \top$ when they are not.[110] A nonexpansive map from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{Y}$ is a function $f : X \to Y$ such that for any $x, x' \in X$, $f(x)$ and $f(x')$ are related when x and x' are. When x and x' are not related, $f(x)$ and $f(x')$ might still be related.[111] The category $\mathsf{B}\mathbf{Spa}$ is well-known under different names, **EndoRel** in [Vig23], **Rel** in [AHS06] (although that name is more commonly used for the category where relations are morphisms) and 2**Rel** in my book. Here are a couple of fun examples of B-spaces:

[109] Hence, the choice of terminology L-relation.

[110] This convention might look backwards, but it makes sense with the morphisms.

[111] Note that this interpretation of nonexpansiveness depends on our just chosen convention. Swapping the meaning of $d(x, y) = \top$ and $d(x, y) = \bot$ is the same thing as taking the opposite order on B (i.e $\top \leq \bot$), namely, morphisms become functions $f : X \to Y$ such that for any $x, x' \in X$, $f(x)$ and $f(x')$ are *not* related when neither are x and x'.

1. **Chess.** Let P be the set of positions on a chess board (`a2`, `d6`, `f3`, etc.) and $d_B : P \times P \to \mathsf{B}$ send a pair (p, q) to $\bot$ if and only if q is accessible from p in one bishop's move. The pair (P, d_B) is an object of $\mathsf{B}\mathbf{Spa}$. Let d_Q be the B-relation sending (p, q) to $\bot$ if and only if q is accessible from p in one queen's move. The pair (P, d_Q) is another object of $\mathsf{B}\mathbf{Spa}$. The identity function $\mathrm{id}_P : P \to P$ is nonexpansive from (P, d_B) to (P, d_Q) because whenever a bishop can go from p to q, a queen can too. However, it is not nonexpansive from (P, d_Q) to (P, d_B) because e.g. a queen can go from `a1` to `a2` but a bishop cannot.[112]

[112] In other words, the set of valid moves for a bishop is included in the set of valid moves for a queen, but not vice versa.

2. **Siblings.** Let H be the set of all humans (me, Paul Erdős, my brother Paul, etc.) and $d_S : H \times H \to \mathsf{B}$ send (h, k) to $\bot$ if and only if h and k are full siblings.[113] The pair (H, d_S) is an object of $\mathsf{B}\mathbf{Spa}$. Let $d_=$ be the B-relation sending (h, k) to $\bot$ if and only if h and k are the same person. The pair $(H, d_=)$ is another object of $\mathsf{B}\mathbf{Spa}$. The function $f : H \to H$ sending h to their biological mother is nonexpansive from (H, d_S) to $(H, d_=)$ because whenever h and k are full siblings, they have the same biologcial mother.

[113] Full siblings share the same biological parents.

Examples 79 (Distances)**.** The main examples of L-spaces in this thesis are $[0,1]$-spaces or $[0,\infty]$-spaces. These are sets X equipped with a function $d : X \times X \to [0,1]$ or $d : X \times X \to [0,\infty]$, and we can usually understand $d(x,y)$ as the distance between two points $x, y \in X$. With this interpretation, a function is nonexpansive when applying it never increases the distances between points.[114] Let us give several examples of $[0,1]$- and $[0,\infty]$-spaces:

1. **Euclidean.** Probably the most famous notion of distance in mathematics is the Euclidean distance on real numbers $d : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \to [0,\infty] = (x,y) \mapsto |x-y|$. The distance between any two points is unbounded, but it is never ∞. The pair $(\mathbb{R}, d)$ is an object of $[0,\infty]\mathbf{Spa}$. Multiplication by $r \in \mathbb{R}$ is a nonexpansive function $r \cdot - : (\mathbb{R}, d) \to (\mathbb{R}, d)$ if and only if r is between -1 and 1. Intuitively, a function $f : (\mathbb{R}, d) \to (\mathbb{R}, d)$ is nonexpansive when its derivative at any point is between -1 and 1.[115]

2. **Collaboration.** Let H be the set of humans again. A **collaboration chain** between two humans h and k is a sequence of scientific papers $P_1, \dots, P_n$ such that h is a coauthor of P_1, k is a coauthor of P_n and P_i and P_{i+1} always have at least one common coauthor. The collaboration distance d between two humans h and k is the length of a shortest collaboration chain.[116] For instance $d(\text{me}, \text{Paul Erdős}) = 4$ as computed by `csauthors.net` on February 20th 2024:

$$\text{me} \xrightarrow{\text{[PS21]}} \text{D. Petrişan} \xrightarrow{\text{[GPR16]}} \text{M. Gehrke} \xrightarrow{\text{[EGP07]}} \text{M. Erné} \xrightarrow{\text{[EE86]}} \text{P. Erdős}$$

   The pair (H, d) is a $[0,\infty]$-space, but it could also be seen as a $\mathbb{N}_\infty$-space (because the length of a chain is always an integer).

3. **Hamming.** Let W be the set of words of the English language. If two words u and v have the same number of letters, the Hamming distance $d(u,v)$ between u and v is the number of positions in u and v where the letters do not match.[117] When u and v are of different lengths, we let $d(u,v) = \infty$, and we obtain a $[0,\infty]$-space (W, d). (It is also a $\mathbb{N}_\infty$-space.)

Remark 80. As Examples 79 come with many important intuitions, we will often call an L-relation $d : X \times X \to \mathsf{L}$ a **distance function** and $d(x,y)$ the **distance** from x to y,[118] even when L is neither $[0,1]$ nor $[0,\infty]$.

Examples 81. We give more examples of L-spaces to showcase the potential of our abstract framework.

1. **Diversion.**[119] Let J be the set of products available to consumers inside a vending machine (including a "no purchase" option), the second-choice diversion $d(p,q)$ from product p to product q is the fraction of consumers that switch from buying p to buying q when p is removed (or out of stock) from the machine. That fraction is always contained between 0 and 1, so we have a function $d : J \times J \to [0,1]$ which makes (J, d) an object of $[0,1]\mathbf{Spa}$.[120]

[114] This is a justification for the term nonexpansive. In the setting of distances being real-valued, another popular term is 1-Lipschitz.

[115] The derivatives might not exist, so this is just an intuitive explaination.

[116] As conventions, the length of a chain is number of papers, not humans. Also, $d(h,k) = \infty$ when no such chain exists between h and k, except when $h = k$, then $d(h,h) = 0$ (or we could say it is the length of the empty chain from h to h).

[117] For instance $d(\texttt{carrot}, \texttt{carpet}) = 2$ because these words differ only in two positions, the second and third to last ($\texttt{r} \neq \texttt{p}$ and $\texttt{o} \neq \texttt{e}$).

[118] The asymmetry in the terminology "distance from x to y" is justified because, in general, nothing guarantees $d(x,y) = d(y,x)$.

[119] This example takes inspiration from the diversion matrices in [CMS23], where they consider the automobile market in the U.S. instead of a vending machine.

[120] Eventhough d is valued in $[0,1]$, calling it a distance function does not fit our intuition because when $d(p,q)$ is big, it means the products p and q are probably very similar.

2. **Rank.** Let P be the set of web pages available on the internet. In [BP98], the authors introduce an algorithm to measure the importance of a page $p \in P$ giving it a rank $R(p) \in [0,1]$. This data can be organized in a function $d_R : P \times P \to [0,1]$ which assigns $R(p)$ to a pair (p,p) and 0 (or 1) to a pair (p,q) with $p \neq q$.[121] This yields a $[0,1]$-space (P, d_R).

   The rank of a page varies over time (it is computed from the links between all web pages which change quite frequently), so if we let T be the set of instants of time, we can define $d'_R(p,p)$ to be the function of type $T \to [0,1]$ which sends t to the rank $R(p)$ computed at time t.[122] This makes (P, d'_R) into a $[0,1]^T$-space.

   In order to create a search engine, we also need to consider the input of the user looking for some web page.[123] If U is the set of possible user inputs, we can define $d''_R(p,p)$ to depend on U and T, so that (P, d''_R) is a $[0,1]^{U \times T}$-space.

3. **Collaboration (bis).** In Examples 79, we defined the collaboration distance $d : H \times H \to \mathbb{N}_\infty$ that measures how far two people are from collaborating on a scientific paper. We can define a finer measure by taking into account the total number of people involved in the collaboration. It allows us to say you are closer to Erdös if you wrote a paper with him and no one else than if you wrote a paper with him and two additional coauthors. The distance d' is now valued in $\mathbb{N}_\infty \times \mathbb{N}_\infty$, the first coordinate of $d'(h,k)$ is $d(h,k)$ the length of the shortest collaboration chain between h and k, and the second coordinate of $d'(h,k)$ is the smallest total number of authors in a collaboration chain of length $d(h,k)$. For instance, according to `csauthors.net` on February 20th 2024, there are only two chains of length four between me and Erdös, both involving (the same) seven people, hence $d'(\text{me}, \text{Paul Erdös}) = (4,7)$.

Here is one last example further making the case for working over an abstract complete lattice.

Example 82 (Hausdorff distance)**.** Given an L-relation d on a set X, we define the L-relation $d^\uparrow$ on non-empty finite subsets of X:

$$\forall S, T \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \quad d^\uparrow(S,T) = \sup \left\{ \sup_{x \in S} \inf_{y \in T} d(x,y), \sup_{y \in T} \inf_{x \in S} d(x,y) \right\}.$$

This distance is a variation of a metric defined by Hausdorff in [Hau14].[124] It measures how far apart two subsets are in three steps. First, we postulate that a point $x \in S$ and T are as far apart as x and the closest point $y \in T$. Then, the distance from S to T is as big as the distance between the point $x \in S$ furthest from T. Finally, to obtain a symmetric distance, we take the maximum of the distance from S to T and from T to S. As we expect from any interesting optimization problem, there is a dual formulation given by the L-relation $d^\downarrow$.[125]

$$\forall S, T \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \; d^\downarrow(S,T) = \inf \left\{ \sup_{(x,y) \in C} d(x,y) \mid C \subseteq X \times X, \pi_S(C) = S, \pi_T(C) = T \right\}$$

[121] The values $d_R(p,q)$ when $p \neq q$ are considered irrelevant, so they are filled with an arbitrary value, e.g. 0 or 1.

[122] Again, $d_R(p,q)$ can be set to some unimportant constant value.

[123] The rank of a Wikipedia page about ramen will be lower when the user inputs “`Genre Humaine`” than when they input “`Ramen_Lord`”.

There may be cases where $d'(h,k) = (4,7)$ (a long chain with few authors) and $d'(h,k') = (2,16)$ (a short chain with many authors). Then, with the product of complete lattices defined in Example 74, we could not compare the two distances. This is unfortunate in this application, so we may want to consider a different kind of product of complete lattices. The **lexicographical order** on $\mathbb{N}_\infty \times \mathbb{N}_\infty$ is

$$(\varepsilon, \delta) \leq_{\text{lex}} (\varepsilon', \delta') \Leftrightarrow \varepsilon \leq \varepsilon' \text{ or } (\varepsilon = \varepsilon' \text{ and } \delta \leq \delta').$$

In words, you use the order on the first coordinates, and only when they are equal, you use the order on the second coordinates.

If L and K are complete lattices, $(\mathsf{L} \times \mathsf{K}, \leq_{\text{lex}})$ is a complete lattice where the infimum is not computed pointwise, but rather

$$\inf S = (\inf \pi_{\mathsf{L}} S, \sup\{\varepsilon \mid \forall s \in S, (\inf \pi_{\mathsf{L}} S, \varepsilon) \leq s\}).$$

[124] Hausdorff considered positive real valued distances and compact subsets.

[125] The notation was inspired by [BBKK18]. We write $\pi_S(C)$ for $\{x \in S \mid \exists (x,y) \in C\}$ and similarly for π_T. (We should really write $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} \pi_S(C)$ and $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} \pi_T(C)$.)

To compare two sets with this method, you first need a binary relation C on X that covers all and only the points of S and T in the first and second coordinate respectively. Borrowing the terminology from probability theory, we call C a **coupling** of S and T, it is a subset of $X \times X$ whose "marginals" are S and T. According to the coupling, the distance between S and T is the biggest distance between a pair in the coupling. Among all couplings of S and T, we take the smallest distance they give to be $d^{\downarrow}(S,T)$.

The first punchline of this example is that the two L-relations $d^{\uparrow}$ and $d^{\downarrow}$ coincide.

Proof. We show that for any $S, T \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X$, $d^{\uparrow}(S,T) = d^{\downarrow}(S,T)$.[126]

[126] Hardly adapted from [Mém11, Proposition 2.1].

($\leq$) For any coupling $C \subseteq X \times X$, for any $x \in S$, there is at least one $y_x \in T$ such that $(x, y_x) \in C$ so

$$\sup_{x \in S} \inf_{y \in T} d(x,y) \leq \sup_{x \in S} d(x, y_x) \leq \sup_{(x,y) \in C} d(x,y).$$

After a symmetric argument, we find that $d^{\uparrow}(S,T) \leq \sup_{(x,y)\in C} d(x,y)$ for all couplings, the first inequation follows.

($\geq$) For any $x \in S$, let $y_x \in T$ be a point in T that attains the infimum of $d(x,y)$,[127] and note that our definition ensures $d(x, y_x) \leq d^{\uparrow}(S,T)$. Symmetrically define x_y for any $y \in T$ and let $C = \{(x, y_x) \mid x \in S\} \cup \{(x_y, y) \mid y \in T\}$. It is clear that C is a coupling of S and T, and by our choices of y_x and x_y, we ensured that

[127] It exists because T is non-empty and finite.

$$\sup_{(x,y) \in C} d(x,y) \leq d^{\uparrow}(S,T),$$

therefore we found a coupling witnessing that $d^{\downarrow}(S,T) \leq d^{\uparrow}(S,T)$ as desired. □

The second punchline of this example comes from instantiating it with the complete lattice B. Recall that a B-relation d on X corresponds to a binary relation $R_d \subseteq X \times X$ where x and y are related if and only if $d(x,y) = \bot$. This seemingly backwards convention makes it so that nonexpansive functions are those that preserve the relation. Let us be careful about it while describing $R_{d^{\uparrow}}$ and $R_{d^{\downarrow}}$.

Given $S, T \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X$ and $x \in S$, notice that $\inf_{y \in T} d(x,y) = \bot$ if and only if $d(x,y) = \bot$ for at least one y, or equivalently, if x is related by R_d to at least one $y \in T$. This means the infimum behaves like an existential quantifier. Dually, the supremum acts like a universal quantifier yielding[128]

[128] Symmetrically,
$$\sup_{y \in T} \inf_{x \in S} d(x,y) = \bot \Leftrightarrow \forall y \in T, \exists x \in S, (x,y) \in R_d.$$

$$\sup_{x \in S} \inf_{y \in T} d(x,y) = \bot \iff \forall x \in S, \exists y \in T, (x,y) \in R_d.$$

Combining with its symmetric counterpart, and noting that a binary universal quantification is just an AND, we find that S and T are related by $R_{d^{\uparrow}}$ if and only if

$$\forall x \in S, \exists y \in T, (x,y) \in R_d \text{ and } \forall y \in T, \exists x \in S, (x,y) \in R_d. \tag{60}$$

The relation $R_{d^{\uparrow}}$ is sometimes called the Egli–Milner extension of R_d as in [WS20] and [GPA21].

Given a coupling C of S and T, $\sup_{(x,y)\in X} d(x,y)$ can only equal $\bot$ when all pairs $(x,y) \in C$ are related by R_d. Then, if a coupling $C \subseteq R_d$ exists, the infimum of $d^{\downarrow}$ will be $\bot$. Therefore, S and T are related by $R_{d^{\downarrow}}$ if and only if

$$\exists C \subseteq R_d, \pi_S(C) = S \text{ and } \pi_T(C) = T. \tag{61}$$

The relation $R_{d^{\downarrow}}$ is sometimes called the Barr lifting of R_d [Bar06].

Our proof above yields the equivalence between (60) and (61).[129]

[129] That equivalence is folklore and has probably been given as exercise to many students in a class on bisimulation or coalgebras.

While the categories B**Spa**, $[0,1]$**Spa** and $[0,\infty]$**Spa** are interesting on their own, they contain subcategories which are more widely studied. For instance, the category **Poset** of posets and monotone maps is a full subcategory of B**Spa** where we only keep B-spaces (X,d) where the binary relation corresponding to d is reflexive, transitive and antisymmetric. Similarly, a $[0,\infty]$-space (X,d) where the distance function satisfies the triangle inequality $d(x,z) \leq d(x,y) + d(y,z)$ and reflexivity $d(x,x) \leq 0$ is known as a Lawvere metric space [Law02].

The next section lays out the language we will use to state conditions as those above on L-spaces. It implicitly relies on the following equivalent definition of L-spaces.

Definition 83 (L-structure)**.** Given a complete lattice L, an L**-structure**[130] is a set X equipped with a family of binary relations $R_\varepsilon \subseteq X \times X$ indexed by $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ satisfying

[130] We borrow the name "structure" from the very abstract notion of relational structure used in [FMS21, ?, ?].

- **monotonicity** in the sense that if $\varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$, then $R_\varepsilon \subseteq R_{\varepsilon'}$, and
- **continuity** in the sense that for any I-indexed family of elements $\varepsilon_i \in \mathsf{L}$,[131]

$$\bigcap_{i\in I} R_{\varepsilon_i} = R_\delta, \text{ where } \delta = \inf_{i\in I} \varepsilon_i.$$

[131] By monotonicity, $R_\delta \subseteq R_{\varepsilon_i}$ so the inclusion $R_\delta \subseteq \cap_{i\in I} R_{\varepsilon_i}$ always holds.

Intuitively[132] $(x,y) \in R_\varepsilon$ should be interpreted as bounding the distance from x to y above by ε. Then, monotonicity means the points that are at a distance below ε are also at a distance below ε' when $\varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$. Continuity means the points that are at a distance below a bunch of bounds ε_i are also at a distance below the infimum of those bounds $\inf_{i\in I} \varepsilon_i$.

[132] The proof of Proposition 85 will shed more light on these objects by equating them with L-spaces.

The names for these conditions come from yet another equivalent definition.[133] Organising the data of an L-structure into a function $R : \mathsf{L} \to \mathcal{P}(X \times X)$ sending ε to R_ε, we can recover monotonicity and continuity by seeing $\mathcal{P}(X \times X)$ as a complete lattice like in Example 72. Indeed, monotonicity is equivalent to R being a monotone function between the posets $(\mathsf{L}, \leq)$ and $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \subseteq)$, and continuity is equivalent to R preserving infimums. Seeing L and $\mathcal{P}(X \times X)$ as posetal categories, we can simply say that R is a continuous functor.[134]

[133] This time more directly equivalent.

[134] Limits in a posetal category are always computed by taking the infimum of all the points in the diagram, so preserving limits and preserving infimums is the same thing.

A morphism between two L-structures $(X, \{R_\varepsilon\})$ and $(Y, \{S_\varepsilon\})$ is a function $f : X \to Y$ satisfying

$$\forall \varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}, \forall x, x' \in X, (x,x') \in R_\varepsilon \implies (f(x), f(x')) \in S_\varepsilon. \tag{62}$$

This should feel similar to nonexpansive maps.[135] Let us call L**Str** the category of L-structures.

[135] In words, (62) reads as: if x and x' are at a distance below ε' then so are $f(x)$ and $f(x')$.

We give one trivial example, before proving that L-structures are just L-spaces.

Example 84. A consequence of continuity (take $I = \emptyset$) is that $R_\top$ is the full binary relation $X \times X$. Thefefore, taking $\mathsf{L} = 1$ to be a singleton where $\bot = \top$, a 1-structure is only a set (there is no choice for R), and a morphism is only a function (the implication in (62) is always true because $S_\varepsilon = Y \times Y$). In other words, 1**Str** is isomorphic to **Set**. Instantiating the next result (Proposition 85) means that 1**Spa** is also isomorphic to **Set**, this is clear because there is only one function $d : X \times X \to 1$ for any set X. This example is relatively important because it means the theory we develop later over an arbitrary category of L-spaces specializes to the case of **Set**.

Proposition 85. *For any complete lattice* L*, the categories* L**Spa** *and* L**Str** *are isomorphic.*[136]

[136] This result is a stripped down version of [MPP17, Theorem 4.3]

Proof. Given an L-relation (X, d), we define the binary relations $R^d_\varepsilon \subseteq X \times X$ by

$$(x, x') \in R^d_\varepsilon \iff d(x, x') \leq \varepsilon. \tag{63}$$

This family satisfies monotonicity because for any $\varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$ we have

$$(x, x') \in R^d_\varepsilon \overset{(63)}{\iff} d(x, x') \leq \varepsilon \implies d(x, x') \leq \varepsilon' \overset{(63)}{\iff} (x, x') \in R^d_{\varepsilon'}.$$

It also satisfies continuity because if $(x, x') \in R_{\varepsilon_i}$ for all $i \in I$, then $d(x, x') \leq \varepsilon_i$ for all $i \in I$. By defintion of infimum, we must have $d(x, x') \leq \inf_{i \in I} \varepsilon_i$, hence $(x, x') \in R_{\inf_{i \in I} \varepsilon_i}$. We conclude the forward inclusion ($\subseteq$) of continuity holds, the converse ($\supseteq$) follows from monotonicity.

Taking $\mathsf{L} = \mathsf{B}$, Proposition 85 gives back our interpretation of B**Spa** as the category 2**Rel** from Examples 78. Indeed, a B-structure is just a set X equipped with a binary relation $R_\bot \subseteq X \times X$ (because $R_\top$ is required to equal $X \times X$), and morphisms of B-structures are functions that preserve that binary relation. This also justifies our weird choice of $d(x, y) = \bot$ meaning x and y are related.

Any nonexpansive map $f : (X, d) \to (Y, \Delta)$ in L**Spa** is also a morphism between the L-structures $(X, \{R^d_\varepsilon\})$ and $(Y, \{R^\Delta_\varepsilon\})$ because for all $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ and $x, x' \in X$, we have

$$(x, x') \in R^d_\varepsilon \overset{(63)}{\iff} d(x, x') \leq \varepsilon \overset{(59)}{\implies} \Delta(f(x), f(x')) \leq \varepsilon \overset{(63)}{\iff} (f(x), f(x')) \in R^\Delta_\varepsilon.$$

It follows that the assignment $(X, d) \mapsto (X, \{R^d_\varepsilon\})$ is a functor $F : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \to \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Str}$ acting trivially on morphisms.

Given an L-structure $(X, \{R_\varepsilon\})$, we define the function $d_R : X \times X \to \mathsf{L}$ by

$$d_R(x, x') = \inf \left\{ \varepsilon \in \mathsf{L} \mid (x, x') \in R_\varepsilon \right\}.$$

Note that monotonicity and continuity of the family $\{R_\varepsilon\}$ imply[137]

$$d_R(x, x') \leq \varepsilon \iff (x, x') \in R_\varepsilon. \tag{64}$$

[137] The converse implication ($\Leftarrow$) is by definition of infimum. For ($\Rightarrow$), continuity says that

$$R_{d_R(x,x')} = \bigcap_{\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}, (x,x') \in R_\varepsilon} R_\varepsilon,$$

so $R_{d_R(x,x')}$ contains (x, x'), then by monotonicity, $d_R(x, x') \leq \varepsilon$ implies R_ε also contains (x, x').

This allows us to prove that a morphism $f : (X, \{R_\varepsilon\}) \to (Y, \{S_\varepsilon\})$ is nonexpansive from (X, d_R) to (Y, d_S) because for all $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ and $x, x' \in X$, we have

$$d_R(x, x') \leq \varepsilon \overset{(64)}{\iff} (x, x') \in R_\varepsilon \overset{(62)}{\implies} (f(x), f(x')) \in S_\varepsilon \overset{(64)}{\iff} d_S(f(x), f(x')) \leq \varepsilon,$$

hence putting $\varepsilon = d(x, x')$, we obtain $d_S(f(x), f(x')) \leq d_R(x, x')$. It follows that the assignment $(X, \{R_\varepsilon\}) \mapsto (X, d_R)$ is a functor $G : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Str} \to \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ acting trivially on morphisms.

Observe that (63) and (64) together say that $R^{d_R}_\varepsilon = R_\varepsilon$ and $d_{R^d} = d$, so F and G are inverses to each other on objects. Since both functors do nothing to morphisms, we conclude that F and G are inverses to each other, and that $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \cong \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Str}$. □

2.2 Equational Constraints

It is often the case one wants to impose conditions on the L-spaces they consider. For instance, recall that when L is $[0,1]$ or $[0,\infty]$, L-spaces are sets with a notion of distance between points. Starting from our intuition on the distance between points of the space we live in, people have come up with several abstract conditions they enforce on distance functions. For example, we can restate (with a slight modification[138]) the axioms defining metric spaces.

[138] The separation axiom is now divided in two, (66) and (67).

First, symmetry says that the distance from x to y is the same as the distance from y to x:

$$\forall x, y \in X, \quad d(x,y) = d(y,x). \tag{65}$$

Reflexivity, also called indiscernibility of identicals, says that the distance between x and itself is 0 (i.e. the smallest distance possible):

$$\forall x \in X, \quad d(x,x) = 0. \tag{66}$$

Identity of indiscernibles, also called Leibniz's law, says that if two points x and y are at distance 0, then x and y must be the same:

$$\forall x, y \in X, \quad d(x,y) = 0 \implies x = y. \tag{67}$$

Finally, the triangle inequality says that the distance from x to z is always smaller than the sum of the distances from x to y and from y to z:

$$\forall x, y, z \in X, \quad d(x,z) \leq d(x,y) + d(y,z). \tag{68}$$

There are also very famous axioms on B-spaces (X,d) that arise from viewing the binary relation corresponding to d as some kind of order on elements of X.

First, reflexivity says that any element x is related to itself.[139] Translating back to the B-relation, this is equivalent to:

[139] We abstract orders that look like the "smaller or equal" order $\leq$ on say real numbers rather than the strict order $<$.

$$\forall x \in X, \quad d(x,x) = \bot. \tag{69}$$

Antisymmetry says that if both (x,y) and (y,x) are in the order relation, then they must be equal:

$$\forall x, y \in X, \quad d(x,y) = \bot = d(y,x) \implies x = y. \tag{70}$$

Finally, transitivity says that if (x,y) and (y,z) belong to the order relation, then so does (x,z):

$$\forall x, y, z \in X, \quad d(x,y) = \bot = d(y,z) \implies d(x,z) = \bot. \tag{71}$$

We can immediately notice that all the axioms (65)–(71) start with a universal quantification of variables. A harder thing to see is that we never actually need to talk about equality between distances. For instance, the equation $d(x,y) = d(y,x)$ in the axiom of symmetry (65) can be replaced by two inequations $d(x,y) \leq d(y,x)$

and $d(y,x) \leq d(x,y)$, and moreover since x and y are universally quantified, only one of these inequations is necessary:

$$\forall x,y \in X, \quad d(x,y) \leq d(y,x). \tag{72}$$

If we rely on the equivalence between L-spaces and L-structures (Proposition 85), we can transform (72) into a family of implications indexed by all $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$:[140]

$$\forall x,y \in X, \quad (y,x) \in R^d_\varepsilon \implies (x,y) \in R^d_\varepsilon. \tag{73}$$

[140] Recall that $(x,y) \in R^d_\varepsilon$ is the same thing as $d(x,y) \leq \varepsilon$. Hence, (72) and (73) are equivalent because requiring $d(x,y)$ to be smaller than $d(y,x)$ is equivalent to requiring all upper bounds of $d(y,x)$ (in particular $d(y,x)$ itself) to also be upper bounds of $d(x,y)$.

Starting from the triangle inequality (68) and applying the same transformations that got us from (65) to (73), we obtain a family of implications indexed by two values $\varepsilon, \delta \in \mathsf{L}$:[141]

$$\forall x,y,z \in X, \quad (x,y) \in R^d_\varepsilon \text{ and } (y,z) \in R^d_\delta \implies (x,z) \in R^d_{\varepsilon+\delta}. \tag{74}$$

[141] You can try to prove how (68) and (74) are equivalent if the process of going from the former to the latter was not clear to you.

The last conceptual step is to make the L.H.S. of the implication part of the universal quantification. That is, instead of saying "for all x and y, if P then Q", we say "for all x and y such that P, Q". We do this by introducing a syntax very similar to the equations of universal algebra. We fix a complete lattice $(\mathsf{L}, \leq)$, but as mentioned before, you can keep in mind the examples $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$ and $\mathsf{L} = [0,\infty]$.

Definition 86 (Quantitative equation)**.** A **quantitative equation** (over L) is a tuple comprising an L-space $\mathbf{X}$ called the **context**, two elements $x, y \in X$ and optionally an element $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$. We write these as $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ when no ε is given or $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$ when it is given.

An L-space **A satisfies** a quantitative equation

- $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ if for any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $\hat{\imath}(x) = \hat{\imath}(y)$.
- $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$ if for any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$.

We use ϕ and ψ to refer to a quantitative equation, and we write $\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$ when $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies ϕ.[142] We will also write $\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi$ when the equality $\hat{\imath}(x) = \hat{\imath}(y)$ or the bound $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$ holds for a particular assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$.[143]

[142] Of course, satisfaction generalizes straightforwardly to sets of quantitative equations, i.e. if $\hat{E}$ is a set of quantitative equations, $\mathbf{A} \vDash \hat{E}$ means $\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$ for all $\phi \in \hat{E}$.

[143] and not necessarily for all assignments.

Example 87 (Symmetry)**.** With $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$ or $\mathsf{L} = [0,\infty]$, we want to translate (73) into a quantitative equation. A first approximation would be replacing the relation R^d_ε with our new syntax $=_\varepsilon$ to obtain something like

$$x, y \vdash y =_\varepsilon x \implies x =_\varepsilon y.$$

We are not allowed to use implications like this, so we have implement the last step mentioned above by putting the premise $y =_\varepsilon x$ into the context. This means we need to quantify over variables x and y with a bound ε on the distance from y to x.

Note that when defining satisfaction of a quantitative equation, the quantification happens at the level of assignments $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. Hence, we have to find a context $\mathbf{X}$ such that nonexpansive assignments $\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ correspond to choices of two elements in $\mathbf{A}$ with the same bound ε on their distance.

Let the context $\mathbf{X}_\varepsilon$ be the L-space with two elements x and y such that $d_{\mathbf{X}_\varepsilon}(y,x) = \varepsilon$ and all other distances are $\top$ ($\top$ is either 1 or ∞). A nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X}_\varepsilon \to \mathbf{A}$ is just a choice of two elements $\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y) \in A$ satisfying $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(y), \hat{\imath}(x)) \leq \varepsilon$.[144] For all of these, we have to impose the condition $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$. Therefore, our quantitative equation is

$$\mathbf{X}_\varepsilon \vdash x =_\varepsilon y. \tag{75}$$

For a fixed $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$, an L-space $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies (75) if and only if it satisfies (73). Hence,[145] if $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies that quantitative equation for all $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$, then it satisfies (65), i.e. the distance $d_{\mathbf{A}}$ is symmetric.

[144] Indeed, since $\top$ is the top element of L, the other values of $d_{\mathbf{X}}$ being $\top$ means that they impose no further condition on $d_{\mathbf{A}}$.

[145] Recall our argument in Footnote 140.

In practice, defining the context like this is more cumbersome than need be, so we will define some syntactic sugar to remedy this. Before that, we take the time to do another example.

Example 88 (Triangle inequality)**.** Again with $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$ or $\mathsf{L} = [0,\infty]$, let the context $\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta}$ be the L-space with three elements x, y and z such that $d_{\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta}}(x,y) = \varepsilon$ and $d_{\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta}}(y,z) = \delta$, and all other distances are $\top$. A nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta} \to \mathbf{A}$ is just a choice of three elements $a = \hat{\imath}(x), b = \hat{\imath}(y), c = \hat{\imath}(z) \in A$ such that $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a,b) \leq \varepsilon$ and $d_{\mathbf{A}}(b,c) \leq \delta$. Hence, if $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies

$$\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta} \vdash x =_{\varepsilon+\delta} z, \tag{76}$$

it means that for any such assignment, $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a,c) \leq \varepsilon + \delta$ also holds. We conclude that $\mathbf{A}$ satisifes (74). If $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta} \vdash x =_{\varepsilon+\delta} z$ for all $\varepsilon, \delta \in \mathsf{L}$, then $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies the triangle inequality (68).

Notice that in the contexts $\mathbf{X}_\varepsilon$ and $\mathbf{X}_{\varepsilon,\delta}$, we only needed to set one or two distances and all the others where the maximum they could be $\top$. In our **syntactic sugar** for quantitative equations, we will only write the distances that are important (using the syntax $=_\varepsilon$), and we understand the underspecified distances to be as high as they can be. For instance, (75) will be written[146]

$$y =_\varepsilon x \vdash x =_\varepsilon y, \tag{77}$$

and (76) will be written

$$x =_\varepsilon y, y =_\delta z \vdash x =_{\varepsilon+\delta} z. \tag{78}$$

In this syntax, we call **premises** everything on the left of the turnstile $\vdash$ and **conclusion** what is on the right.

[146] We can understand this syntax as putting back the information in the context into an implication. For instance, you can read (77) as "if the distance from y to x is bounded above by ε, then so is the distance from x to y".

More generally, when we write $\{x_i =_{\varepsilon_i} y_i\}_{i\in I} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$ (resp. $\{x_i =_{\varepsilon_i} y_i\}_{i\in I} \vdash x = y$), it corresponds to the quantitative equation $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$), where the context $\mathbf{X}$ contains the variables in[147]

$$X = \{x, y\} \cup \{x_i \mid i \in I\} \cup \{y_i \mid i \in I\},$$

and the L-relation is defined for $u, v \in X$ by[148]

$$d_{\mathbf{X}}(u,v) = \inf\{\varepsilon \mid u =_\varepsilon v \in \{x_i =_\varepsilon y_i\}_{i\in I}\}.$$

Here are some more translations:

[147] Note that the x_is, y_is, x and y need not be distinct. In fact, x and y almost always appear in the x_is and y_is.

[148] In words, the distance from u to v is the smallest value ε such that $u =_\varepsilon v$ was a premise. If no such premise occurs, the distance from u to v is $\top$. It is rare that u and v appear several times together (because $u =_\varepsilon v$ and $u =_\delta v$ can be replaced with $u =_{\inf\{\varepsilon,\delta\}} v$), but our definition allows it.

- (66) becomes $\vdash x =_0 x$,[149]
- (67) becomes $x =_0 y \vdash x = y$,
- (69) becomes $\vdash x =_\perp x$,
- (70) becomes $x =_\perp y, y =_\perp x \vdash x = y$, and
- (71) becomes $x =_\perp y, y =_\perp z \vdash x =_\perp z$.

[149] We write nothing to the left of the turnstile $\vdash$ instead of writing $\emptyset$.

Remark 89. The translations of (66) and (69) look very close. In fact, noting that 0 is the bottom element of $[0,1]$ and $[0,\infty]$, the quantitative equation $\vdash x =_\perp x$ can state the reflexivity of a distance in $[0,1]$ or $[0,\infty]$ or the reflexivity of a binary relation.

Similarly, in the translation of the triangle inequality (78), if we let ε and δ range over B and interpret $+$ as an OR, we get three vacuous quantitative equations[150] and the translation of (71) above. So transitivity and triangle inequality are the same under this abstract point of view.[151]

[150] When either ε or δ equals $\top$, $\varepsilon + \delta = \top$, but when the conclusion of a quantitative equation is $x =_\top z$, it must be satisfied because $\top$ is an upper bound on all distances by definition.

[151] These observations were probably folkloric since at least the original publication of [Law02] in 1973.

Let us emphasize one thing about contexts of quantitative equations, they only give constraints that are upper-bounds for distances. In particular, it can be very hard to operate on the quantities in L non-monotonically. For instance, we will see (after Definition 98) that we cannot read $x =_{\varepsilon_1} y, y =_{\varepsilon_2} z, y =_{\varepsilon_3} y \vdash x =_{\varepsilon_1+\varepsilon_2-\varepsilon_3} z$ as saying that $d(x,z) \leq d(x,y) + d(y,z) - d(y,y)$, and one intuitive explaination is that subtraction is not a monotone operation on $[0,\infty] \times [0,\infty]$.[152] Another consequence is that an equation ϕ will always entail ψ when the latter has a "stricter" context, that is, when the upper-bounds are smaller. We prove (a more general version of) this below.

[152] We work in $\mathsf{L} = [0,\infty]$ and $d(y,y)$ might be nonzero.

Lemma 90. *Let $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ be a nonexpansive map. If $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$), then $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $\mathbf{Y} \vdash f(x) = f(y)$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash f(x) =_\varepsilon f(y)$).*

Proof. Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{A}$, yields a nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} \circ f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. By hypothesis, we have

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} \mathbf{X} \vdash x = y \qquad (\text{resp. } \mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} \mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y),$$

which means $\hat{\iota}(f(x)) = \hat{\iota}(f(y))$ (resp. $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\iota}(f(x)), \hat{\iota}(f(y))) \leq \varepsilon$). Thus, we conclude

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \mathbf{Y} \vdash f(x) = f(y) \qquad (\text{resp. } \mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \mathbf{Y} \vdash f(x) =_\varepsilon f(y)).$$ □

Let us continue this list of examples for a while, just in case it helps a reader that is looking to translate an axiom into a quantitative equation. We will also give some results later which could imply that reader's axiom cannot be translated in this language.

Examples 91. For any complete lattice L.

1. The **strong triangle inequality** states that $d(x,z) \leq \max\{d(x,y), d(y,z)\}$, it is equivalent to the satisfaction of the following family of quantitative equations

$$\forall \varepsilon, \delta \in \mathsf{L}, \quad x =_\varepsilon y, y =_\delta z \vdash x =_{\sup\{\varepsilon,\delta\}} z. \tag{79}$$

Let $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$ or $\mathsf{L} = [0,\infty]$.

1.

Let $\mathsf{L} = \mathsf{B}$.

1. A binary relation R on $X \times X$ is said to be **functional** if there are no two distinct $y, y' \in X$ such that $(x,y) \in R$ and $(x,y') \in R$ for a single $x \in X$. This is equivalent to satisfying
$$x =_\perp y, x =_\perp y' \vdash y = y'. \tag{80}$$
2. We say $R \subseteq X \times X$ is **injective** if there are no two distinct $x, x' \in X$ such that $(x,y) \in R$ and $(x',y) \in R$ for a single $y \in X$.[153] This is equivalent to satisfying
$$x =_\perp y, x' =_\perp y \vdash x = x'. \tag{81}$$
3. We say $R \subseteq X \times X$ is **circular** if whenever (x,y) and (y,z) belong to R, then so does (z,x) (compare with transitivity (71)). This is equivalent to satisfying
$$x =_\perp y, y =_\perp z \vdash z =_\perp x. \tag{82}$$

[153] Equivalently, the opposite (or converse) of R is functional.

You may try to formulate totality or surjectivity of a binary relation with quantitative equations, but you will find that difficult. We show in Examples 103 that it is not possible.

That is enough concrete examples. We now turn to the study of subcategories of L**Spa** that are defined via (sets of) quantitative equations. The most notable examples are the categories **Poset** of posets and **Met** of (extended) metric spaces:

- **Poset** is the full subcategory of B**Spa** with all B-spaces satisfying reflexivity, antisymmetry and transitivity stated as quantitative equations:
$$\hat{E}_{\mathbf{Poset}} = \{\vdash x =_\perp x, x =_\perp y, y =_\perp x \vdash x = y, x =_\perp y, y =_\perp z \vdash x =_\perp z\}.$$
- **Met** is the full subcategory of $[0,1]$**Spa** (taking $[0,\infty]$ works just as well) with all $[0,1]$-spaces satisfying symmetry, reflexivity, identity of indiscernibles and triangle inequality stated as quantitative equations: $\hat{E}_{\mathbf{Met}}$ contains all of the following
$$\begin{aligned} \forall \varepsilon \in [0,1], \quad & y =_\varepsilon x \vdash x =_\varepsilon y \\ & \vdash x =_0 x \\ & x =_0 y \vdash x = y \\ \forall \varepsilon, \delta \in [0,1], \quad & x =_\varepsilon y, y =_\delta z \vdash x =_{\varepsilon+\delta} z. \end{aligned}$$

Example 92.

Given a set $\hat{E}$ of quantitative equations, we can define a full subcategory of L**Spa** that contains only those L-spaces that satisfy $\hat{E}$, this is the category $\mathbf{GMet}(\mathsf{L}, \hat{E})$ whose objects we call **generalized metric spaces** or **spaces** for short. We also write $\mathbf{GMet}(\hat{E})$ or **GMet** when the complete lattices L or the set $\hat{E}$ are fixed or irrelevant. There is an evident forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ which is the composition of the inclusion functor $\mathbf{GMet} \to \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ and $U : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \to \mathbf{Set}$.[154]

[154] Recall that while we use the same symbol for both forgetful functors, you can disambiguate them with the hyperlinks.

2.3 The Categories GMet

In this section, we study various properties of the categories of generalized metric spaces. We fix a complete lattice L and a set of quantitative equations $\hat{E}$ throughout, and denote by **GMet** the category of L-spaces that satisfy $\hat{E}$.

The goal here is mainly to become familiar with L-spaces and quantitative equations, so not all results will be useful later. This also means we will often avoid the use of some abstract results (many will be proved later) that can (sometimes drastically) simplify some proofs.[155] In order to keep all the information about **GMet** in the same place, we will quickly mention at the end some natural things that can be derived via the big theorems of Chapter 3.

[155] For instance, we will see that $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is a right adjoint, so it has many nice properties which we could use in this section.

We also take some time to identify some (well-known) conditions on L-spaces that cannot be expressed via quantitative equations.[156] These proofs are always in the same vein, we know **GMet** has some property, we show the class of L-spaces with a condition does not have that property, hence that condition is not expressible as a set of quantitative equations.

[156] Unfortunately, we cannot make an exhaustive list since the literature on different notions of metric spaces is too vast.

Products

The category **GMet** has all products. We prove this in three steps. First, we find the terminal object, second we show L**Spa** has all products, and third we show the products of L-spaces which all satisfy some quantitative equation also satisfies that quantitative equation.

Proposition 93. *The category* **GMet** *has a terminal object.*

Proof. The terminal object $\mathbf{1}$ in L**Spa** is relatively easy to find,[157] it is a singleton $\{*\}$ with the L-relation $d_{\mathbf{1}}$ sending $(*,*)$ to $\bot$. Indeed, for any L-space $\mathbf{X}$, we have a function $! : X \to *$ that sends any x to $*$, and because $d_{\mathbf{1}}(*,*) = \bot \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x,x')$ for any $x, x' \in X$, ! is nonexpansive. We obtain a morphism $! : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{1}$, and since any other morphism $\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{1}$ must have the same underlying function[158], ! is the unique morphism of this type.

[157] Again, many abstract results could help guide our search, but it is enough to have a bit of intuition about L-spaces.

[158] Because $\{*\}$ is terminal in **Set**.

Since **GMet** is a full subcategory of L**Spa**, it is enough to show $\mathbf{1}$ is in **GMet** to conclude it is the terminal object in this subcategory. We can do this by showing $\mathbf{1}$ satisfies absolutely all quantitative equations, and in particular those of $\hat{E}$.[159] Let $\mathbf{X}$ be any L-space, $x, y \in X$ and $\varepsilon \in$ L. As we have seen above, there is only one assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{1}$, and it sends x and y to $*$. This means

[159] Which defined **GMet** at the start of this section.

$$\hat{\iota}(x) = * = \hat{\iota}(y) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{\mathbf{1}}(\hat{\iota}(x), \hat{\iota}(y)) = d_{\mathbf{1}}(*,*) = \bot \leq \varepsilon.$$

Therefore $\mathbf{1}$ satisfies both $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ and $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_{\varepsilon} y$. □

Proposition 94. *The category* L**Spa** *has all products.*

Proof. Let $\{\mathbf{A}_i = (A_i, d_i) \mid i \in I\}$ be a family of L-spaces indexed by I. We define the L-space $\mathbf{A} = (A, d)$ with carrier $A = \prod_{i \in I} A_i$ (the Cartesian product of the carriers) and L-relation $d : A \times A \to$ L defined by the following supremum:[160]

[160] For $a \in A$, we write a_i the ith coordinate of a.

$$\forall a, b \in A, \quad d(a,b) = \sup_{i \in I} d_i(a_i, b_i). \tag{83}$$

For each $i \in I$, we have the evident projection $\pi_i : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}_i$ sending $a \in A$ to $a_i \in A_i$, and it is nonexpansive because, by definition, for any $a, b \in A$,

$$d_i(a_i, b_i) \leq \sup_{i \in I} d_i(a_i, b_i) = d(a,b).$$

We will show that $\mathbf{A}$ with these projections is the product $\prod_{i \in I} \mathbf{A}_i$.

Let $\mathbf{X}$ be some L-space and $f_i : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}_i$ be a family of nonexpansive maps. By the universal property of the product in **Set**, there is a unique function $\langle f_i \rangle : X \to A$ satisfying $\pi_i \circ \langle f_i \rangle = f_i$ for all $i \in I$. It remains to show $\langle f_i \rangle$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{A}$. For any $x, x' \in X$, we have[161]

$$d(\langle f_i \rangle(x), \langle f_i \rangle(x')) = \sup_{i \in I} d_i(f_i(x), f_i(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x').$$

[161] The equation holds because the ith coordinate of $\langle f_i \rangle(x)$ is $f_i(x)$ by definition of $\langle f_i \rangle$, and the inequation holds because for all $i \in I$, $d_i(f_i(x), f_i(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x')$ by nonexpansiveness of f_i.

Note that a particular case of this construction for I being empty is the terminal object $\mathbf{1}$ from Proposition 93. Indeed, the empty Cartesian product is the singleton, and the empty supremum is the bottom element $\bot$. □

In order to show that satisfaction of a quantitative equation is preserved by the product of L-spaces, we first prove a simple lemma.

Lemma 95. *Let ϕ be a quantitative equation with context $\mathbf{X}$. If $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ is a nonexpansive map and $\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi$ for an assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, then $\mathbf{B} \vDash^{f \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi$.*

Proof. There are two very similar cases. If ϕ is of the form $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$, we have[162]

[162] The equivalences hold by definition of $\vDash$.

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi \iff \hat{\imath}(x) = \hat{\imath}(y) \implies f\hat{\imath}(x) = f\hat{\imath}(y) \iff \mathbf{B} \vDash^{f \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi.$$

If ϕ is of the form $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$, we have[163]

[163] The equivalences hold by definition of $\vDash$, and the implication holds by nonexpansiveness of f.

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi \iff d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon \implies d_{\mathbf{B}}(f\hat{\imath}(x), f\hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon \iff \mathbf{B} \vDash^{f \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi. \quad \square$$

Proposition 96. *If all L-spaces $\mathbf{A}_i$ satisfy a quantitative equation ϕ, then $\prod_{i \in I} \mathbf{A}_i \vDash \phi$.*

Proof. Let $\mathbf{A} = \prod_{i \in I} \mathbf{A}_i$ and $\mathbf{X}$ be the context of ϕ. It is enough to show that for any assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, the following equivalence holds:[164]

[164] When I is empty, the L.H.S. of (84) is vacuously true, and the R.H.S. is true since $\mathbf{A}$ is the terminal object of L-space which we showed satisfies all quantitative equations in Proposition 93.

$$\left(\forall i \in I, \mathbf{A}_i \vDash^{\pi_i \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi\right) \iff \mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi. \tag{84}$$

The proposition follows because if $\mathbf{A}_i \vDash \phi$ for all $i \in I$, then the L.H.S. holds for any $\hat{\imath}$, hence the R.H.S. does too, and we conclude $\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$. Let us prove (84).

($\Rightarrow$) Consider the case $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$. The satisfaction $\mathbf{A}_i \vDash \phi$ means $\pi_i\hat{\imath}(x) = \pi_i\hat{\imath}(y)$. If it is true for all $i \in I$, then we must have $\hat{\imath}(x) = \hat{\imath}(y)$ by universality of the product, thus we get $\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi$. In case $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$, the satisfaction $\mathbf{A}_i \vDash \phi$ means $d_{\mathbf{A}_i}(\pi_i\hat{\imath}(x), \pi_i\hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$. If it is true for all $i \in I$, we get $\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$ because

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) = \sup_{i \in I} d_{\mathbf{A}_i}(\pi_i\hat{\imath}(x), \pi_i\hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon.$$

($\Leftarrow$) Apply Lemma 95 for all π_i. □

Corollary 97. *The category* **GMet** *has all products, and they are computed like in* L**Spa**.[165]

[165] We showed that products in L**Spa** of objects in **GMet** also belong to **GMet**, it follows that this is also their products in **GMet** because the latter is a full subcategory of L**Spa**.

Unfortunately, this means that the notion of metric space originally defined in [Fré06], and incidentally what the majority of mathematicians calls metric spaces, are not instances of generalized metric spaces as we defined them. Since they only allow finite distances, some infinite products do not exist.[166] In general, if one wants to bound the distance above by some $B \in \mathsf{L}$, this can be done with the equation $\vdash x =_B y$, but the value B is still allowed as a distance. For instance $[0,1]$**Spa** is the full subcategory of $[0,\infty]$**Spa** defined by the equation $\vdash x =_1 y$.

[166] For instance let $\mathbf{A}_n$ be the metric space with two points $\{a,b\}$ at distance $n > 0 \in \mathbb{N}$ from each other. Then $\mathbf{A} = \prod_{n>0\in\mathbb{N}} \mathbf{A}_n$ exists in $[0,\infty]$**Spa** as we have just proven, but

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(a^*, b^*) = \sup_{n>0\in\mathbb{N}} d_{\mathbf{A}_n}(a,b) = \sup_{n>0\in\mathbb{N}} n = \infty,$$

which means $\mathbf{A}$ is not a metric space in the sense of [Fré06].

Arguably, this is only a superficially negative result since it is already common in parts of the literature [?] to allow infinite distances because the resulting category of metric spaces has better properties (like having infinite products and coproducts). There are some other conditions that one would like to impose on $[0,\infty]$-spaces which are not even preserved under finite products. We give two examples arising under the terminology partial metric.

Definition 98. An $[0,\infty]$-space (A,d) is called a **partial metric space** if it satisfies the following condiditons [Mat94, Definition 3.1]:[167]

[167] There is some ambiguity in what $+$ and $-$ means when dealing with ∞ (the original paper supposes distances are finite), but it is rather unimportant to

$$\forall a,b \in A, \quad a = b \iff d(a,a) = d(a,b) = d(b,b) \tag{85}$$

$$\forall a,b \in A, \quad d(a,a) \leq d(a,b) \tag{86}$$

$$\forall a,b \in A, \quad d(a,b) = d(b,a) \tag{87}$$

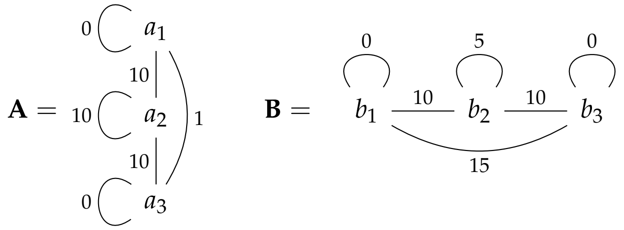
$$\forall a,b,c \in A, \quad d(a,c) \leq d(a,b) + d(b,c) - d(b,b) \tag{88}$$

These conditions look similar to what we were able to translate into equations before, but the first and last are problematic. We can translate (86) into $x =_\varepsilon y \vdash x =_\varepsilon x$, (87) is just symmetry which we can translate into $y =_\varepsilon x \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$.

For (85), note that the forward implication is trivial, but for the converse, we would need to compare three distances inside the context, which seems impossible because the context only bounds distances by above. For (88), the problem comes from the minus operation on distances which will not interact well with our only possibility of bounding by above. Indeed, if we tried something like $x =_{\varepsilon_1} y, y =_{\varepsilon_2} z, y =_{\varepsilon_3} y \vdash x =_{\varepsilon_1+\varepsilon_2-\varepsilon_3} z$, we could always take ε_3 really big (even ∞) and make the distance between x and z as close to 0 as we would like.

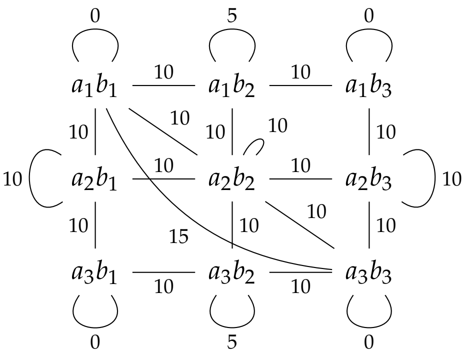
These are just informal arguments, but thanks to Corollary 97, we can prove formally that these conditions are not expressible as (sets of) quantitative equations. Let $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ be the $[0,\infty]$-spaces pictured below (the distances are symmetric).[168]

[168] The numbers on the lines indicate the distance between the ends of the line, e.g. $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_1,a_1) = 0$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_1,a_3) = 1$, and $d_{\mathbf{B}}(b_2,b_3) = 10$.



We can verify (by exhaustive checks) that $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ are partial metric spaces. If we take their product inside $[0,\infty]\mathbf{Spa}$, we find the following $[0,\infty]$-space (some distances are omitted) which does not satisfy (85) nor (88).[169]

$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} =$



[169] For (85), the three points in the middle row $\{a_2b_1, a_2b_2, a_2b_3\}$ are all at distance from each other and from themselves while not being equal. For (88), we have

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_1b_1, a_3b_3) = 15, \text{ and}$$
$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_1b_1, a_2b_2) + d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_2b_2, a_3b_3) - d_{\mathbf{A}}(a_2b_2, a_2b_2) = 10,$$

but $15 > 10$.

We conclude that there is no set E of quantitative equations such that $\mathbf{GMet}([0,\infty], E)$ is the full subcategory of $[0,\infty]\mathbf{Spa}$ containing all the partial metric spaces.[170]

[170] It is still possible that the category of partial metrics and nonexpansive maps is identified with some $\mathbf{GMet}$. That would mean (infinite) products of partial metrics exist but they are not computed with supremums.

This result is a bit more damaging to our concept of generalized metric space (especially since partial metric spaces were motivated by some considerations in programming semantics), but we had to expect something like this would happen with how much time mathematicians had to use and abuse the name metric.

Isometries

Since the forgetful functor $U : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \to \mathbf{Set}$ preserves isomorphisms, we know that the underlying function of an isomorphism in $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ is a bijection between the carriers. What is more, we show in Proposition 100 it must preserve distances on the nose, i.e. it is an isometry.

Definition 99 (Isometry)**.** A morphism $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ of L-spaces is called an **isometry** if[171]

$$\forall x, x' \in X, \quad d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x')) = d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x'). \tag{89}$$

[171] The inequation in (59) was replaced by an equation.

If furthermore, f is injective, we call it an **isometric embedding**.[172]

[172] If $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is an isometric embedding, we can identify $\mathbf{X}$ with the subspace of $\mathbf{Y}$ containing all the elements in the image of f. Conversely, the inclusion of a subspace of $\mathbf{Y}$ in $\mathbf{Y}$ is always an isometric embedding.

Proposition 100. *In* $\mathbf{GMet}$*, isomorphisms are precisely the bijective isometries.*

Proof. We show a morphism $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is has an inverse $f^{-1} : \mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{X}$ if and only if it is a bijective isometry.

($\Rightarrow$) Since the underlying functions of f and f^{-1} are inverses, they must be bijections. Moreover, using (59) twice, we find that for any $x, x' \in X$,[173]

$$d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = d_{\mathbf{X}}(f^{-1}f(x), f^{-1}f(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x'),$$

thus $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x'))$, so f is an isometry.

[173] This is a general argument showing that any nonexpansive function with a right inverse is an isometry, it is also an isometric embedding because a right inverse in $\mathbf{Set}$ implies injectivity.

($\Leftarrow$) Since f is bijective, it has an inverse $f^{-1} : Y \to X$ in $\mathbf{Set}$, but we have to show f^{-1} is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{Y}$ to $\mathbf{X}$. For any $y, y' \in Y$, by surjectivity of f, there are $x, x' \in X$ such that $y = f(x)$ and $y' = f(x')$, then we have

$$d_{\mathbf{X}}(f^{-1}(y), f^{-1}(y')) = d_{\mathbf{X}}(f^{-1}f(x), f^{-1}f(x')) = d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x')) = d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y, y').$$

Hence f^{-1} is nonexpansive, it is even an isometry. □

In particular, this means, as is expected, that isomorphisms preserve the satisfaction of quantitative equations. We can show a stronger statement: any isometric embedding reflects the satisfaction of quantitative equations.[174]

[174] This is stronger because we have just shown the inverse of an isomorphisms is an isometric embedding.

Proposition 101. *Let $f : \mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{Z}$ be an isometric embedding between* L*-spaces and ϕ a quantitative equation, then*

$$\mathbf{Z} \vDash \phi \implies \mathbf{Y} \vDash \phi. \tag{90}$$

Proof. Let $\mathbf{X}$ be the context of ϕ. Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ yields an assignment $f \circ \hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Z}$. By hypothesis, we know that $\mathbf{Z}$ satisfies ϕ for this particular assignment, namely,

$$\mathbf{Z} \vDash^{f \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi. \tag{91}$$

We can use this and the fact that f is an isometric embedding to show $\mathbf{X} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi$. There are two very similar cases.

If $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$, then we can show $\hat{\imath}(x) = \hat{\imath}(y)$ because we know $f\hat{\imath}(x) = f\hat{\imath}(x)$ by (91) and f is injective.

If $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$, then we have $d_{\mathbf{Y}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(y)) = d_{\mathbf{Z}}(f\hat{\imath}(x), f\hat{\imath}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$, where the equation holds because f is an isometry and the inequation holds by (91). □

Corollary 102. *Let $f : \mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{Z}$ be an isometric embedding between* L*-spaces. If $\mathbf{Z}$ belongs to* **GMet***, then so does $\mathbf{Y}$. In particular, all the subspaces of a generalized metric space are also generalized metric spaces.*[175]

[175] Both parts are immediate. The first follows from applying (90) to all ϕ in $\hat{E}$, the set of quantitative equations defining **GMet**. The second follows from Footnote 172.

Examples 103. Corollary 102 can be useful to identify some properties of L-spaces that cannot be modelled with quantitative equations. Here are a couple of examples.

1. A binary relation $R \subseteq X \times X$ is called **total** if for every $x \in X$, there exists $y \in X$ such that $(x, y) \in R$. Let **TotRel** be the full subcategory of B**Spa** containing only total relations, is **TotRel** equal to some $\mathbf{GMet}(\mathsf{B}, \hat{E})$ for some $\hat{E}$? The existential quantification in the definition of total seems hard to simulate with a quantitative equation, but this is not a guarantee that maybe several equations cannot interact in such a counter-intuitive way.

   In order to prove that no set $\hat{E}$ defines total relations (i.e. $\mathbf{X} \vDash \hat{E}$ if and only if the relation corresponding to $d_{\mathbf{X}}$ is total), we can exhibit an example of a B-space that is total with a subspace that is not total. It follows that **TotRel** is not closed under taking subspaces, so it is not a category of generalized metric spaces by Corollary 102.[176]

   Let $\mathbf{N}$ be the B-space with carrier $\mathbb{N}$ and B-relation $d_{\mathbf{N}}(n, m) = \bot \Leftrightarrow m = n + 1$ (the corresponding relation is the graph of the successor function). This space satisfies totality, but the subspace obtained by removing 1 is not total because $d_{\mathbf{N}}(0, n) = \bot$ only when $n = 1$.

   This same example works to show that surjectivity[177] cannot be defined via quantitative equations.

[176] Actually, we have only proven that **TotRel** cannot be defined as a subcategory of B**Spa** with quantitative equations. There may still be some convoluted way that $\mathbf{TotRel} \cong \mathbf{GMet}(\mathsf{L}, \hat{E})$ for some cleverly picked L and $\hat{E}$ (L could even be equal to B).

[177] This condition is symmetric to totality: $R \subseteq X \times X$ is **surjetive** if for every $y \in X$, there exists $x \in X$ such that $(x, y) \in R$.

2. A very famous condition to impose on metric spaces is **completeness** (we do not need to define it here). Just as famous is the fact that $\mathbb{R}$ with the Euclidean distance from Examples 79 is complete but the subspace $\mathbb{Q}$ is not. Thus, completeness cannot be defined via quantitative equations.[178]

[178] Still with the caveat that the category of complete metric spaces might still be isomorphic to some **GMet**.

With this characterization of isomorphisms, we can also show the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is an isofibration which concretely means that if you have a bijection $f : X \to Y$ and a generalized metric $d_{\mathbf{Y}}$ on Y, then you can construct a generalized metric $d_{\mathbf{X}}$ on X such that $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is an isomorphism. Indeed, if you let $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = d_{\mathbf{Y}}(f(x), f(x'))$, then f is automatically a bijective isometry.[179]

[179] Clearly, it is the unique distance on X that works, and we know that $\mathbf{X}$ belongs to **GMet** thanks to Corollary 102.

Definition 104 (Isofibration)**.** A functor $P : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{D}$ is called an **isofibration** if for any isomorphism $f : X \to PY$ in $\mathbf{D}$, there is an isomorphism $g : X' \to Y$ such that $Pg = f$, in particular $PX' = X$.

Proposition 105. *The forgetful functor* $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ *is an isofibration.*

We wonder now how to complete the conceptual diagram below.

$$\text{isomorphism in } \mathbf{GMet} \longleftrightarrow \text{bijective isometries}$$
$$\text{??? in } \mathbf{GMet} \longleftrightarrow \text{isometric embeddings}$$

Since isometric embeddings correspond to subspaces, one might think that they are the monomorphisms in **GMet**. Unfortunately, they are way more restrained. Any nonexpansive map that is injective is a monomorphism. To prove this, we rely on the existence of a space A that (informally) *can pick elements*.

Proposition 106. *There is a generalized metric space* A *on the set* $\{*\}$ *such that for any other space* $\mathbf{X}$*, any function* $f : \{*\} \to X$ *is a nonexpansive map* $\text{A} \to \mathbf{X}$.[180]

[180] In category theory speak, A is a representing object of the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$.

Proof. In L**Spa**, A is also easy to find, its L-relation is defined by $d_{\text{A}}(*, *) = \top$. Indeed, any function $f : \{*\} \to X$ is nonexpansive because $\top$ is the maximum value $d_{\mathbf{X}}$ can assign, so

$$d_{\mathbf{X}}(f(*), f(*)) \leq \top = d_{\text{A}}(*, *).$$

Unfortunately, this L-space does not satisfy some quantitative equations (e.g. reflexivity $x \vdash x =_{\perp} x$), so we cannot guarantee it belongs to **GMet**.

Recall that $\mathbf{1}$ is a generalized metric space on the same set $\{*\}$, but with $d_{\mathbf{1}}(*, *) = \perp$. However, in many cases, $\mathbf{1}$ is not the right candidate either because if every function $f : \{*\} \to X$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{1}$ to $\mathbf{X}$, it means $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x) = \perp$ for all $x \in X$, which is not always the case.[181]

[181] It is equivalent to satisfying reflexivity.

We have two L-spaces at the extremes of a range of L-spaces $\{(\{*\}, d_\varepsilon)\}_{\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}}$, where the L-relation d_ε sends $(*, *)$ to ε. At one extreme, we are guaranteed to be in **GMet**, but we are too restricted, and at the other extreme we might not belong to **GMet**. Getting inspiration from the intermediate value theorem, we can attempt to find a middle ground, namely, a value $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ such that setting $d_{\text{A}}(*, *) = \varepsilon$ yields a space that lives in **GMet** but is not too restricted.

One thing that could make sense is to take the biggest value (and hence the least restricted space that is in **GMet**). Formally, let

$$d_{\mathbb{1}}(*,*) = \sup\left\{\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L} \mid (\{*\}, d_\varepsilon) \vDash \hat{E}\right\}.$$

It remains to check that any function $f : \{*\} \to X$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbb{1}$ to $\mathbf{X}$. Consider the image of f seen as a subspace of $\mathbf{X}$. By Corollary 102, it belongs to **GMet** and hence satisfies $\hat{E}$. Moreover, it is clearly isomorphic to the L-space $(\{*\}, d_\varepsilon)$ with $\varepsilon = d_{\mathbf{X}}(f(*), f(*))$[182], which means that L-space satisfies $\hat{E}$ as well (by Corollary 102 again). We conclude that $d_{\mathbf{X}}(f(*), f(*)) \leq d_{\mathbb{1}}(*,*)$.

[182] The isomorphism is the restriction of f to its image.

As a bonus, one could check that for any $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ that is smaller than $d_{\mathbb{1}}(*,*)$, $(\{*\}, d_\varepsilon)$ also belongs to **GMet**. □

Proposition 107. *In* **GMet**, *monomorphisms are precisely the injective nonexpansive maps.*

Proof. We show a morphism $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is monic if and only if it is injective.

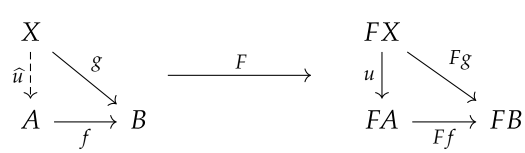
($\Rightarrow$) Let $x, x' \in X$ be such that $f(x) = f(x')$, and identify these elements with functions $x, x' : \{*\} \to X$ sending $*$ to x and x' respectively. By Proposition 106, we get two nonexpansive maps $x, x' : \mathbb{1} \to \mathbf{X}$. Post-composing by f, we find that $f \circ x = f \circ x'$ because they both send $*$ to $f(x) = f(x')$. By monicity of f, we find that $x = x'$ (as morphisms and hence as elements of X). We conclude that f is injective.

($\Leftarrow$) Suppose that $f \circ g = f \circ h$ for some nonexpansive maps $g, h : \mathbf{Z} \to \mathbf{X}$. Applying the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$, we wind that $f \circ g = f \circ h$ also as functions. Since Uf is injective, Ug and Uh must be equal, and since U is faithful, we obtain $g = h$. □

It remains to give a categorical characterisation of isometric embeddings. This will rely on a well-known[183] abstract notion that we define here for completeness.

[183] While it is well-known, especially to those familiar with fibered category theory, it does not usually fit in a basic category theory background.

Definition 108 (Cartesian morphism)**.** Let $F : \mathbf{C} \to \mathbf{D}$ be a functor, and $f : A \to B$ be a morphism in $\mathbf{D}$. We say f is a **cartesian morphism** if for every morphism $g : X \to B$ and factorization $Fg = Ff \circ u$, there exists a unique morphism $\widehat{u} : X \to A$ with $F\widehat{u} = u$ satisfying $x = f \circ \widehat{u}$. This can be summarized (without the quantifiers) in the diagram below.



Example 109 (in **GMet**)**.** Let us unroll this in the important case for us, when F is the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$. A nonexpansive map $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ is a cartesian morphism if for any nonexpansive map $g : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{B}$, all functions $u : X \to A$ satisfying $g = f \circ u$ are nonexpansive maps $u : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$.[184]

[184] We do not bother to write $\widehat{u}$ as it is automatically unique with underlying function u because U is faithful.

We can turn this around into an equivalent definition. The morphism $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ is cartesian if for all functions $u : X \to A$, $f \circ u$ being nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}$ to

$\mathbf{B}$ implies u is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{A}$.[185] In [AHS06, Definition 8.6], f is also called an *initial morphism*.

[185] If $f \circ u$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{B}$, then it is equal to g for some $g : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{B}$ which yields $u : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ being nonexpansive.

Proposition 110. *A morphism $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ in* **GMet** *is an isometric embedding if and only if it is monic and cartesian.*

Proof. By Proposition 107, being an isometric embedding is equivalent to being a monomorphism (i.e. being injective) and being an isometry. Therefore, it is enough to show that when f is injective, isometry $\iff$ cartesian.

($\Rightarrow$) Suppose f is an isometry, and let $u : X \to A$ be a function such that $f \circ u$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{B}$, we need to show u is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$.[186] This is true because

[186] We use the definition of cartesian in Example 109.

$$\forall x, x' \in \mathbf{X}, \quad d_{\mathbf{A}}(u(x), u(x')) = d_{\mathbf{B}}(fu(x), fu(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x'),$$

where the equation follows from f being an isometry and the inequation from nonexpansiveness of $f \circ u$.

($\Leftarrow$) Suppose f is cartesian. For any $a, a' \in A$, we know that $d_{\mathbf{B}}(f(a), f(a')) \leq d_A(a, a')$, but we still need to show the converse inequality. Let $\mathbf{X}$ be the subspace of B containing only the image of a and a' (its carrier is $\{f(a), f(a')\}$), and $g : X \to A$ be the function sending $f(a)$ to a and $f(a')$ to a'.[187] Notice that $f \circ g$ is the inclusion of $\mathbf{X}$ in B which is nonexpansive. Because f is cartesian, g must then be nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}$ to $\mathbf{A}$ which implies

[187] We use the injectivity of f here.

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, a') = d_{\mathbf{A}}(g(f(a)), g(f(a'))) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(f(a), f(a')) = d_{\mathbf{B}}(f(a), f(a')).$$

We conclude that f is an isometry. □

Corollary 111. *If the composition $\mathbf{A} \xrightarrow{f} \mathbf{B} \xrightarrow{g} \mathbf{C}$ is an isometric embedding, then f is an isometric embedding.*[188]

[188] With the characterisation of Proposition 110, this abstractly follows from [AHS06, Proposition 8.9]. We give the concrete proof anyways.

Proof. It is a standard result that if $g \circ f$ is monic then so is f. Even more standard for injectivity. Now, if $g \circ f$ is an isometry, we have for any $a, a' \in X$,[189]

[189] The equation holds by hypothesis that $g \circ f$ is an isometry and the two inequations hold by nonexpansiveness of g and f.

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, a') = d_{\mathbf{C}}(gf(a), gf(a')) \leq d_{\mathbf{B}}(f(a), f(a')) \leq d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, a'),$$

and we conclude that $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, a') = d_{\mathbf{B}}(f(a), f(a'))$, hence f is an isometry. □

The question of concretely characterizing epimorphisms is harder to settle. We can do it for L**Spa**, but not for an arbitrary **GMet**.

Proposition 112. *In* L**Spa***, a morphism $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is epic if and only if it is surjective.*

Proof. ($\Rightarrow$) Given any $a \in A$, we define the L-space $\mathbf{A}_a$ to be $\mathbf{A}$ with an additional copy of a with all the same distances. Namely, the carrier is $A + \{*_a\}$, for any $a' \in A$, $d_{\mathbf{A}_a}(*_a, a') = d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, a')$ and $d_{\mathbf{A}_a}(a', *_a) = d_{\mathbf{A}}(a', a)$, and all the other distances are as in $\mathbf{A}$.[190]

[190] This construction is already impossible to do in an arbitrary **GMet**. For instance, if $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $x =_0 y \vdash x = y$, then $\mathbf{A}_a$ does not because $d_{\mathbf{A}_a}(a, *_a) = 0$.

If $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is not surjective, then pick $a \in A$ that is not in the image of f, and define two functions $g_a, g_* : A \to A + \{*_a\}$ that act as identity on all A except a

where $g_a(a) = a$ and $g_*(a) = *_a$. By construction, both g_a and g_* are nonexpansive from $\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{A}_a$ and $g_a \circ f = g_* \circ f$. Since $g_a \neq g_*$, f cannot be epic, and we have proven the contrapositive of the forward implication.

($\Leftarrow$) Suppose that $g, g' : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ are morphisms in $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ such that $g \circ f = g' \circ f$. Apply the forgetful functor to get $Ug \circ Uf = Ug' \circ Uf$, and since U is epic in $\mathbf{Set}$, we know $Ug = Ug'$. Since U is faithful, we conclude that $g = g'$.[191] □

[191] This direction works in an arbitrary **GMet**, that is, surjections are epic in any **GMet**.

Proposition 113. *Let $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ be a split epimorphism between* L*-spaces and ϕ a quantitative equation, then*

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi \implies \mathbf{B} \vDash \phi. \tag{92}$$

Proof. Let $g : \mathbf{B} \to \mathbf{A}$ be the right inverse of f (i.e. $f \circ g = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{B}}$) and $\mathbf{X}$ be the context of ϕ.[192] Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{B}$ yields an assignment $g \circ \hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. By hypothesis, we know that $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies ϕ for this particular assignment, namely,

[192] Note that we already argued in Footnote 173 that the right inverse implies g is an isometric embedding. Then we could conclude by Corollary 102, and the proof given is essentially the same.

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{g \circ \hat{\iota}} \phi. \tag{93}$$

Now, we can apply Lemma 95 with $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ to obtain $\mathbf{B} \vDash^{f \circ g \circ \hat{\iota}} \phi$, and since $f \circ g = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{B}}$, we conclude $\mathbf{B} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \phi$. □

Remark 114. It is not true in general that the image $f(A)$ of a nonexpansive function $f : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ (seen as a subspace of $\mathbf{B}$) satisfies the same equations as $\mathbf{A}$. For instance, let $\mathbf{A}$ contain two points $\{a, b\}$ all at distance $1 \in [0, \infty]$ from each other (even from themselves). The $[0, \infty]$-relation is symmetric so it satisfies for all $\varepsilon \in [0, 1]$. $y =_\varepsilon x \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$. If we define $\mathbf{B}$ with the same points and distances except $d_{\mathbf{B}}(a, b) = 0.5$, then the identity function is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{B}$, but its image is $\mathbf{B}$ in which the distance is not symmetric.

Coproducts

Proposition 115. *The category* **GMet** *has an initial object.*

Proof. The initial object $\varnothing$ in $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ is the empty set with the only possible L-relation $\varnothing \times \varnothing \to \mathsf{L}$ (the empty function). The empty function $f : \varnothing \to X$ is always nonexpansive from $\varnothing$ to $\mathbf{X}$ because (59) is vacuously satisfied.

Just as for the terminal object, since **GMet** is a full subcategory of $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$, it suffices to show $\varnothing$ is in **GMet** to conclude it is initial in this subcategory. We do this by showing $\varnothing$ satisfies absolutely all quantitative equations, and in particular those of $\hat{E}$. This is easily done because when $\mathbf{X}$ is not empty,[193] there are no assignments $\mathbf{X} \to \varnothing$, so $\varnothing$ vacuously satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ and $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$. □

[193] The context of a quantitative equation cannot be empty because the latter must come with some elements of the context.

Proposition 116. *The category* $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ *has all coproducts.*

Proof. We just showed the empty coproduct (i.e. the initial object) exists. Let $\{\mathbf{A}_i = (A_i, d_i) \mid i \in I\}$ be a family of L-spaces indexed by a non-empty set I. We define the L-space $\mathbf{A} = (A, d)$ with carrier $A = \coprod_{i \in I} A_i$ (the disjoint union of the carriers) and L-relation $d : A \times A \to \mathsf{L}$ defined by:[194]

[194] In words, $\mathbf{A}$ is the L-space with a copy of each $\mathbf{A}_i$ where the L-relation sends two points in different copies to $\top$ (intuitively, the copies are completely unrelated inside $\mathbf{A}$).

$$\forall a,b \in A, \quad d(a,b) = \begin{cases} d_i(a,b) & \exists i \in I, a,b \in A_i \\ \top & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

For each $i \in I$, we have the evident coprojection $\kappa_i : \mathbf{A}_i \to \mathbf{A}$ sending $a \in A_i$ to its copy in A, and it is nonexpansive because, by definition, for any $a, b \in A_i$, $d(a,b) = d_i(a,b)$.[195] We show $\mathbf{A}$ with these coprojections is the coproduct $\coprod_{i \in I} \mathbf{A}_i$.

Let $\mathbf{X}$ be some L-space and $f_i : \mathbf{A}_i \to \mathbf{X}$ be a family of nonexpansive maps. By the universal property of the coproduct in **Set**, there is a unique function $[f_i] : A \to X$ satisfying $[f_i] \circ \kappa_i = f_i$ for all $i \in I$. It remains to show $[f_i]$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{X}$. For any $a, b \in A$, suppose a belongs to A_i and b to A_j for some $i, j \in I$, then we have[196]

$$d_{\mathbf{X}}([f_i](a), [f_i](b)) = d_{\mathbf{X}}(f_i(a), f_j(b)) \leq \begin{cases} d_i(a,b) & i = j \\ \top & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} = d(a,b). \qquad \square$$

[195] Each coprojection is even an isometric embedding.

[196] The first equation holds by definition of $[f_i]$ (it applies f_i to elements in the copy of A_i). The inequation follows by nonexpansiveness of f_i which is equal to f_j when $i = j$. The second equation is by definition of d.

The forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ has a left adjoint. Its concrete description is too involved, so we will prove this later in **??**, but for the special case of $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$, we can prove it now.

Proposition 117. *The forgetful functor $U : \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} \to \mathbf{Set}$ has a left adjoint.*

Proof. For any set X, we define the **discrete space** $\mathbf{X}_\top$ to be the set X equipped with the L-relation $d_\top : X \times X \to \mathsf{L}$ sending any pair to $\top$.

For any L-space $\mathbf{A}$ and function $f : X \to A$, the function f is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}_\top$ to $\mathbf{A}$, thus $\mathbf{X}_\top$ is the free object on X (with respect to U). By categorical arguments, we obtain the left adjoint sending X to $\mathbf{X}_\top$. $\square$

3 Universal Quantitative Algebra

Saxophone concerto E minor OP 88

Deluxe

In the sequel and unless otherwise stated, Σ is an arbitrary signature and **GMet** is am arbitrary category of generalized metric spaces defined by a set $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$ of quantitative equations.

3.1 Quantitative Algebras

Definition 118 (Quantitative algebra)**.** A **quantitative Σ-algebra** (or just quantitative algebra)[197] is a set A equipped with a Σ-algebra structure $(A, [\![-]\!]_A) \in \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ and a generalized metric space structure $(A, d_{\mathbf{A}}) \in \mathbf{GMet}$. We will switch between using the single symbol $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ or the triple $(A, [\![-]\!]_A, d_{\mathbf{A}})$ when referring to a quantitative algebra, we will also write $\mathbb{A}$ for the **underlying** Σ-algebra, $\mathbf{A}$ for the underlying space, and A for the underlying set.

[197] We sometimes write simply algebra, with the `knowledge` link going to this definition.

A **homomorphism** from $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ to $\hat{\mathbb{B}}$ is a function $h : A \to B$ between the underlying sets of $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{B}}$ that is both a homomorphism $h : \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{B}$ and a nonexpansive function $h : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$. We sometimes emphasize and call h a nonexpansive homomorphism.[198] The identity maps $\mathrm{id}_A : A \to A$ and the composition of two homomorphisms are always homomorphisms, therefore we have a category whose objects are quantitative algebras and morphisms are nonexpansive homomorphisms. We denote it by $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$.

[198] We will not distinguish between a nonexpansive homomorphism $h : \hat{\mathbb{A}} \to \hat{\mathbb{B}}$ and its underlying homomorphism or nonexpansive function or function. We may write Uh with U being the appropriate forgetful functor when necessary.

This category is concrete over **Set**, $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$, **GMet** with forgetful functors:

- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{Set}$ sends a quantitative algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ to its underlying set A and a nonexpansive homomorphism to the underlying function between carriers.
- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ sends $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ to its underlying algebra $\mathbb{A}$ and a nonexpansive homomorphism to the underlying homomorphism.
- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{GMet}$ sends $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ to its underlying space $\mathbf{A}$ and a nonexpansive homomorphism to the underlying nonexpansive function.

One can quickly check that the following diagram commutes, and that it yields an alternative definition of $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$ as a pullback of categories.[199]

[199] We can also mention there is another forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{LSpa}$ obtained by composing $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \to \mathbf{GMet}$ with the inclusion $\mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{LSpa}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) & \xrightarrow{U} & \mathbf{GMet} \\ {\scriptstyle U}\downarrow & \searrow^{U} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle U} \\ \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma) & \xrightarrow[U]{} & \mathbf{Set} \end{array}$$

Example 119. Since a quantitative algebra is just an algebra and a generalized metric space on the same set, we can find simple examples by combining pieces we have already seen.

1. In Examples 4, we saw that an algebra for the signature $\Sigma = \{\mathsf{p}:0\}$ is just a pair (X, x) comprising a set X with a distinguished point $x \in X$. In Examples 79, we discussed the $\mathbb{N}_\infty$-space (H, d) where H is the set of humans and d is the collaboration distance. We can consider the quantitative Σ-algebras $(H, \text{Paul Erdös}, d)$, which is the set of all humans with Paulo Erdös as a distinguished point and the collaboration distance. Note that **GMet** is instantiated as $\mathbb{N}_\infty\mathbf{Spa}$, i.e. $\mathsf{L} = \mathbb{N}_\infty$ and $E_{\mathbf{GMet}} = \emptyset$.
2. In Examples 4, we saw the $\{\mathsf{f}:1\}$-algebra $\mathbb{Z}$ where f is interpreted as adding 1. On top of that, we consider the B-relation $d_{\leq} : \mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z} \to \mathsf{B}$ that sends (n, m) to $\bot$ if and only if $n \leq m$. We get a quantitative algebra $(\mathbb{Z}, -+1, d_{\leq})$.[200]
3. In Example 92, we saw that $\mathbb{R}$ equipped with the Euclidean distance d is a metric space, i.e. an object of $\mathbf{GMet} = \mathbf{Met}$. The addition of real numbers is the most natural interpretation of $\Sigma = \{+:2\}$, thus we get a quantitative algebra $(\mathbb{R}, +, d)$.

[200] This time, **GMet** is instantited as B**Spa**.

Here are some more compelling examples from the adjacent literature.

Example 120 (Hausdorff)**.** In Example 82, we defined the Hausdorff distance $d^{\uparrow}$ on $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X$ that depends on an L-relation $d : X \times X \to \mathsf{L}$. In Example 62, we descibed a $\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}$-algebra structure on $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X$ (interpreting $\oplus$ as union). Combining these, we get a quantitative $\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}$-algebra $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X, \cup, d^{\uparrow})$ for any L-space (X, d).

If we know that (X, d) satisfies some quantitative equations in $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$, we can sometimes prove that so does $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X, d^{\uparrow})$. For instance, picking $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$ or $\mathsf{L} = [0, \infty]$, $\mathbf{GMet} = \mathbf{Met}$, and $E_{\mathbf{GMet}} = \hat{E}_{\mathbf{Met}}$, one can show that if (X, d) belongs to **Met**, then so does $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X, d^{\uparrow})$, and we still get a quantitative $\Sigma_{\mathbf{SLat}}$-algebra $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}X, \cup, d^{\uparrow})$.

Examples 121 (In **Met**)**.**

Examples 122 (In 2**Rel**)**.**

Definition 123 (Quantitative Equation)**.** A **quantitative equation** (over Σ and L) is a tuple comprising an L-space $\mathbf{X}$ called the **context**,[201] two terms $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and optionally an element $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$. We write these as $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ when no ε is given or $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ when it is given.

[201] Note that even with algebras in **GMet**, the context is in L**Spa**.

An quantitative algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ **satisfies** a quantitative equation

- $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ if for any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$.

- $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ if for any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}) \leq \varepsilon$.

We use ϕ and ψ to refer to a quantitative equation, and we write $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \phi$ when $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies ϕ.[202] We will also write $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \phi$ when the equality $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}$ or the bound $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}) \leq \varepsilon$ holds for a particular assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$.[203]

[202] As usual, satisfaction generalizes straightforwardly to sets of quantitative equations, i.e. if $\hat{E}$ is a set of quantitative equations, $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \hat{E}$ means $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \phi$ for all $\phi \in \hat{E}$.

[203] and not necessarily for all assignments.

Our overloading of the terminology *quantitative equation* (recall Definition 86) is practically harmless because an equation from Chapter 2 $\mathbf{X} \vdash x = y$ (or $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$) can be seen as the new kind of equation by viewing x and y as terms via the embedding η_X^Σ. Formally, since $[\![\eta_X^\Sigma(x)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} = \hat{\iota}(x)$ for any $x \in X$ and $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, we have[204]

[204] Later on, we will seldom distinguish between x and $\eta_X^\Sigma(x)$ and write the former for simplicity.

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash \mathbf{X} \vdash x = y \iff \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \mathbf{X} \vdash \eta_X^\Sigma(x) = \eta_X^\Sigma(y)$$
$$\mathbf{A} \vDash \mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon y \iff \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \mathbf{X} \vdash \eta_X^\Sigma(x) =_\varepsilon \eta_X^\Sigma(y).$$

In particular, since we assumed the underlying space of any $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$ to be a generalized metric space, we can say that $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \phi$ for any $\phi \in E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$.[205] Another consequence is that over the empty signature $\Sigma = \varnothing$, the class of possible quantitative equations from both chapters coincide.

[205] We implicitly see the equations in $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$ as the new kind of equations from Definition 123.

Furthermore, the new quantitative equations also generalize the equations of universal algebra (Definition 11). Indeed, given an equation $X \vdash s = t$, we construct the quantitative equation $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t$ where the new context is the discrete space on the old context. We show that

$$\mathbb{A} \vDash X \vdash s = t \iff \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t. \tag{94}$$

By Proposition 117, any assignment $\iota : X \to A$ is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{X}_\top$ to $\mathbf{A}$. Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X}_\top \to \mathbf{A}$ also yields an assignment $X \to A$ by applying the forgetful functor U since the carrier of $\mathbf{X}_\top$ is X. Therefore, the interpretations of s and t coincide under all assignments if and only if they coincide under all nonexpansive assignments.

Let us get to more interesting examples now.

Example 124 (Almost commutativity)**.** Let $+ : 2 \in \Sigma$ be a binary operation symbol. As shown above, to ensure $+$ is interpreted as a commutative operation in a quantitative algebra, we can use the quantitative equation $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash x + y = y + x$ where $X = \{x, y\}$. In fact, using the same syntactic sugar as we did in Chapter 2 to avoid explicitly describing all the context, we can write $x, y \vdash x + y = y + x$.[206]

[206] In fact, whenever we write $x_1, \dots, x_n \vdash s = t$, we mean $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t$ where $X = \{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$, and similarly for $=_\varepsilon$.

Since the context can be any L-space, we can now add some nuance to the commutativity property. For instance, we can guarantee that $+$ is commutative only between elements that are close to each other with $x =_\varepsilon y \vdash x + y = y + x$ where $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$ is fixed.[207] Unrolling the syntactic sugar, the context is the space $\mathbf{X}_\varepsilon$ containing two points x and y with $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, y) = \varepsilon$ and all other distances being $\top$. Therefore, a nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is a choice of two elements $\hat{\iota}(x)$ and $\hat{\iota}(y)$ with $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\iota}(x), \hat{\iota}(y)) \leq \varepsilon$ and no other constraint. We conclude that $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $x =_\varepsilon y \vdash x + y = y + x$ if and only if $[\![+]\!]_A(a, b) = [\![+]\!]_A(b, a)$ whenever $d_{\mathbf{A}}(a, b) \leq \varepsilon$.

[207] I saw this example first in [Ada22].

Another possible variant on commutativity is $x =_\bot x, y =_\bot y \vdash x + y = y + x$. This means $+$ is guaranteed to be commutative only on elements which have a self-distance of $\bot$.

As a sanity check for our definitions, we can verify that homomorphisms preserve the satisfaction of quantitative equations.[208]

[208] Just like we did in Lemma 14 for **Set**. In fact, the proofs are very similar.

Lemma 125. *Let ϕ be a equation with context $\mathbf{X}$. If $h : \hat{\mathbb{A}} \to \hat{\mathbb{B}}$ is a homomorphism and $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi$ for an assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, then $\hat{\mathbb{B}} \vDash^{h \circ \hat{\imath}} \phi$.*

Proof. We have two very similar cases. Let ϕ be the equation $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi &\iff [\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} && \text{definition of } \vDash \\
&\implies h([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) = h([\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \\
&\implies [\![s]\!]_B^{h\circ\hat{\imath}} = [\![t]\!]_B^{h\circ\hat{\imath}} && \text{by (9)} \\
&\iff \hat{\mathbb{B}} \vDash^{h\circ\hat{\imath}} \phi. && \text{definition of } \vDash
\end{aligned}$$

Let ϕ be the equation $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \phi &\iff d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon && \text{definition of } \vDash \\
&\implies d_{\mathbf{A}}(h([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}), h([\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}})) \leq \varepsilon \\
&\implies d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_B^{h\circ\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_B^{h\circ\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon && \text{by (9)} \\
&\iff \hat{\mathbb{B}} \vDash^{h\circ\hat{\imath}} \phi. && \text{definition of } \vDash
\end{aligned}$$

□

Given a set $\hat{E}$ of quantitative equations, A $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$**-algebra** is a Σ-algebra that satisfies $\hat{E}$. We define $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$, the category of $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras, to be the full subcategory of $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$ containing only those algebras that satisfy $\hat{E}$. There are many forgetful functors obtained by composing the forgetful functors from $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$ with the inclusion functor $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$:

- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{Set} = \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{U} \mathbf{Set}$
- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma) = \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{U} \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$
- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{GMet} = \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{U} \mathbf{GMet}$
- $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa} = \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma) \xrightarrow{U} \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$

Definition 126 (Quantitative algebraic theory)**.** Given a set $\hat{E}$ of quantitative equations over Σ and L, the **quantitative algebraic theory** generated by $\hat{E}$, denoted by $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, is the class of quantitative equations that are satisfied in all $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras:[209]

$$\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) = \left\{\phi \mid \forall \hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}), \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \phi\right\}.$$

[209] Again $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ is never a set (recall Definition 19).

Equivalently, $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ contains the equations that are semantically entailed by $\hat{E}$,[210]

[210] As in the non-quantitative case, $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ contains all of $\hat{E}$ but also many more equations like $x \vdash x = x$ or $x =_\varepsilon y \vdash x =_\varepsilon y$. Furthermore, $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ contains all the quantitative equations in $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$ because the underlying spaces of algebras in $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ belong to $\mathbf{GMet}$.

namely $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ if and only if

$$\forall \hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma), \quad \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \hat{E} \implies \hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash \phi.$$

We will see in §3.2 how to find which quantitative equations are entailed by others.

We call a class of quantitative equations a quantitative algebraic theory if it is generated by some set $\hat{E}$.

Fix a set $\hat{E}$ of quantitative equations over Σ and L. For any generalized metric space $\mathbf{X}$, we can define a binary relation $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and an L-relation $d_{\hat{E}}$ on Σ-terms as follows:[211] for any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

$$s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) \quad \text{and} \quad d_{\hat{E}}(s,t) = \inf\{\varepsilon \mid \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})\}.$$

[211] The notation for $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and $d_{\hat{E}}$ should really depend on the space $\mathbf{X}$, but we prefer to omit this for better readability.

The definition of $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ is completely analogous to what we did in the non-quantitative case (18). The definition of $d_{\hat{E}}$ is new but it also looks like how we defined an L-relation from an L-structure in Proposition 85. In fact, we can also prove a counterpart to (64), giving us an equivalent definition of $d_{\hat{E}}$: for any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$,

$$d_{\hat{E}}(s,t) \leq \varepsilon \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}). \tag{95}$$

Proof of (95). ($\Leftarrow$) holds directly by definition of infimum. For ($\Rightarrow$), we need to show that any $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$. Let $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ and $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ be a nonexpansive assignment. We know that for every δ such that $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\delta t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}(\llbracket s \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}, \llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \delta$, thus[212]

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\llbracket s \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}, \llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \inf\{\delta \mid \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\delta t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})\} = d_{\hat{E}}(s,t) \leq \varepsilon.$$

[212] Both inequations hold by hypothesis.

We conclude that $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \vDash^{\hat{\imath}} \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$, and we are done since $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ and $\hat{\imath}$ were arbitrary. □

When we were not dealing with distances, we only had to prove that the relation defined between terms was a congruence (Lemma 22), and then we were able to construct the term algebra by quotienting the set of terms and interpreting the operation symbols syntactically. Right now, we have to prove a bit more, namely that $d_{\hat{E}}$ is invariant under $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ so the L-relation restricts to the quotient, and that the resulting L-space is a generalized metric space.

Let us decompose this in several small lemmas. We also collect here some more lemmas that look similar, many of which will be part of the proof of soundness when we introduce quantitative equational logic.[213] Let $\mathbf{X} \in \mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma)$ be universally quantified in all these lemmas.

First, Lemmas 127–130 mean that $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ is a congruence.[214]

[213] We were less explicit back then, but that is what happenned with Lemma 22 and soundness of equational logic.

[214] The proofs are exactly the same as for Lemma 22 because $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ does not involve distances.

Lemma 127. *For any $t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash t = t$.*

Proof. Obviously, $\llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}} = \llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ holds for all $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. □

Lemma 128. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash t = s$.*

Proof. If $\llbracket s \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}} = \llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ holds for all $\hat{\imath}$, then $\llbracket t \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}} = \llbracket s \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ holds too. □

Lemma 129. *For any $s, t, u \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ and $\mathbf{X} \vdash t = u$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = u$.*

Proof. If $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ and $[\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![u]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ holds for all $\hat{\imath}$, then $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![u]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ holds too. □

Lemma 130. *For any $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$, $s_1, \ldots, s_n, t_1, \ldots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s_i = t_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash \mathsf{op}(s_1, \ldots, s_n) = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)$.*

Proof. For any assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, we have $[\![s_i]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t_i]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ for all i. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} [\![\mathsf{op}(s_1, \ldots, s_n)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![s_1]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, \ldots, [\![s_n]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) && \text{by (6)} \\ &= [\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_A([\![t_1]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, \ldots, [\![t_n]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) && \forall i, [\![s_i]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t_i]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} \\ &= [\![\mathsf{op}(s_1, \ldots, s_n)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}. && \text{by (6)} \end{aligned}$$ □

Lemmas 131 and 132 mean that $d_{\hat{E}}(s, t) = d_{\hat{E}}(s', t')$ whenever $s \equiv_{\hat{E}} s'$ and $t \equiv_{\hat{E}} t'$.[215]

[215] By Lemma 131, if $t \equiv_{\hat{E}} t'$, then

$$\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t.$$

By Lemma 132, if $s \equiv_{\hat{E}} s'$, then

$$\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t' \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s' =_\varepsilon t'.$$

Combining these with (95), we get

$$d_{\hat{E}}(s, t) \leq \varepsilon \iff d_{\hat{E}}(s', t') \leq \varepsilon.$$

Since ε is arbitrary, we conclude $d_{\hat{E}}(s, t) = d_{\hat{E}}(s', t')$.

Lemma 131. *For any $s, t, t' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ and $\mathbf{X} \vdash t = t'$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t'$.*

Proof. For any $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, we have $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon$ and $[\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$, thus

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t']\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t']\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon.$$ □

Lemma 132. *For any $s, s', t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ and $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = s'$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s' =_\varepsilon t$.*

Proof. Symmetric argument to the previous proof. □

Lemmas 133–136 will correspond to other rules in quantitative equational logic.

Lemma 133. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\top t$.*

Proof. By definition of $\top$ (the supremum of all L), for any $\hat{\imath}$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \top$. □

Lemma 134. *For any $x, x' \in X$, if $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = \varepsilon$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon x'$.*

Proof. For any nonexpansive $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, we have[216]

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![x]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![x']\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}(x), \hat{\imath}(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = \varepsilon.$$ □

[216] The equation holds by definition of $[\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ on variables, and the inequation holds by definition of nonexpansiveness.

Lemma 135. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and $\varepsilon, \varepsilon' \in \mathsf{L}$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ and $\varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{\varepsilon'} t$.*[217]

[217] In words, if the interpretations of s and t are at distance at most ε, then they are also at distance at most ε' when $\varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$.

Proof. For any $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, we have $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'$. □

Lemma 136. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and $\{\varepsilon_i\}_{i \in I} \subseteq \mathsf{L}$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{\varepsilon_i} t$ for all $i \in I$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ with $\varepsilon = \inf_{i \in I} \varepsilon_i$.*

Proof. For any $\hat{\imath}$, and for all $i \in I$, we have $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon_i$ by hypothesis. By definition of infimum, this means $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \inf_{i \in I} \varepsilon_i = \varepsilon$. □

This takes care of all except two rules in quantitative equational logic which we will explain in no time. The last result we will use to define the term algebra is a generalization of Lemma 90.

Lemma 137. *Let $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ be a nonexpansive map. If $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$), then $\mathbf{A}$ satisfies $\mathbf{Y} \vdash \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s) =_\varepsilon \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)$).*[218]

[218] Note that when s and t are variables, we get back Lemma 90. When

Proof. Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{A}$, yields a nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} \circ f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. Moreover, by functoriality of $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$, we have

$$[\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} \overset{(7)}{=} [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma(\hat{\iota} \circ f) = [\![-]\!]_A \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \hat{\iota} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f = [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(-)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}.$$

By hypothesis, we have

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \qquad (\text{resp. } \mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t),$$

which means

$$\begin{gathered} [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} = [\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ f} = [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} \\ \text{resp. } d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ f}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ f}) \leq \varepsilon. \end{gathered}$$

Thus, we conclude

$$\mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \mathbf{Y} \vdash \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s) = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t) \qquad (\text{resp. } \mathbf{A} \vDash^{\hat{\iota}} \mathbf{Y} \vdash \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s) =_\varepsilon \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)). \qquad \square$$

Let us end our list of small results with Lemmas 138 and 139 which are for later.

Lemma 138. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$, and for any $\varepsilon \in \mathsf{L}$, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$.*[219]

[219] In words, if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies an equation where the context is the discrete space on X, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies that same equation with the context replaced by any other L-space on X. This is also a special case of Lemma 137 where $f : \mathbf{X}_\top \to \mathbf{X}$ is the identity function.

Proof. For any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, you can pre-compose it with $\mathrm{id}_X : \mathbf{X}_\top \to \mathbf{X}$ (which is nonexpansive) without changing the interpretation of terms: $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} = [\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}\circ \mathrm{id}_X}$. By hypothesis, we know that $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $s = t$ (resp. $s =_\varepsilon t$) under the nonexpansive assignement $\hat{\iota} \circ \mathrm{id}_X : \mathbf{X}_\top \to \mathbf{A}$, and we conclude $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ also satisfies $s = t$ (resp. $s =_\varepsilon t$) under the assignment $\hat{\iota}$. $\square$

Lemma 139. *For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, if $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $X \vdash s = t$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$.*[220]

[220] In words, if the underlying (not quantitative) algebra satisfies an equation, then so does the quantitative algebra where the context can be endowed with any L-relation.

Proof. Any nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is in particular an assignment $\hat{\iota} : X \to A$, thus $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}$ hold by hypothesis that $\mathbb{A}$ satisfies $X \vdash s = t$. $\square$

We can now get back to the equality $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and distance $d_{\hat{E}}$ between terms, and define the underlying space of the quantitative term algebra.

Since $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ is an equivalence for any $\mathbf{X}$, we can consider the set $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\!\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ of **terms modulo** $\hat{E}$. We still denote with $[-]_{\hat{E}} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\!\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ the canonical quotient map, and by Lemmas 131 and 132, we can define an L-relation on terms modulo $\hat{E}$ by factoring $d_{\hat{E}}$ through $[-]_{\hat{E}}$. We obtain the L-relation $d_{\hat{E}}$ as the unique function making the triangle below commute.[221]

[221] We used the same symbol, because the first $d_{\hat{E}}$ was only used to define this new $d_{\hat{E}}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \times \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow{d_{\hat{E}}} & \mathsf{L} \\ {\scriptstyle [-]_{\hat{E}} \times [-]_{\hat{E}}} \downarrow & \nearrow_{d_{\hat{E}}} & \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} \times \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} & & \end{array} \tag{96}$$

We write $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ for the resulting L-space $(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}}, d_{\hat{E}})$. We still have an alternative definition analog to (95).

$$d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon \Longleftrightarrow \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}). \tag{97}$$

In order to prove that $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ belongs to **GMet**, we will show a generalization of Lemma 34. It essentially states that satisfaction of quantitative equations is preserved by substitutions that satisfy some nonexpansiveness-like condition.

Lemma 140. *Let $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t$ be an equation, $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ an assignment such that*

$$\forall y, y' \in Y, \quad \mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y,y')} \sigma(y') \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}), \tag{98}$$

and $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ a $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra. If $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$), then it also satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) =_\varepsilon \sigma^*(t)$).

Proof. Let $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ be a nonexpansive assignment, we need to show $[\![\sigma^*(s)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = [\![\sigma^*(t)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$ (resp. $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\sigma^*(s)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![\sigma^*(t)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq \varepsilon$). Just like in Lemma 34, we define the assignment $\hat{\imath}_\sigma : Y \to A$ that sends $y \in Y$ to $[\![\sigma(y)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$, and we had already proven $[\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}_\sigma} = [\![\sigma^*(-)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}$. Now, it is enough to show $\hat{\imath}_\sigma$ is nonexpansive $\mathbf{Y} \to \mathbf{A}$[222] and the lemma will follow because by hypothesis, $[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}_\sigma} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}_\sigma}$ (reps. $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}_\sigma}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}_\sigma}) \leq \varepsilon$).

[222] Something we did not have to do in the non-quantitative case.

For any $y, y' \in Y$, we have

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\imath}_\sigma(y), \hat{\imath}_\sigma(y')) = d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\sigma(y)]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![\sigma(y')]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) \leq d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y, y'),$$

where the equation holds by definition of $\hat{\imath}_\sigma$, and the inequation holds because $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ belongs to $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ and hence satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y,y')} \sigma(y') \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ (in particular under the nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath}$). Hence $\hat{\imath}_\sigma$ is nonexpansive. □

Lemma 141. *For any L-space $\mathbf{X}$ and any quantitative equation $\phi \in E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$, $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \vDash \phi$.*

Proof. We mentioned in Footnote 210 that $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, so any $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies it.

Let $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{Y} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ is a nonexpansive assignment. By the axiom of choice,[223] there is a function $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ satisfying $[\sigma(y)]_{\hat{E}} = \hat{\imath}(y)$ for all $y \in Y$. This assignment satisfies (98) because for all $y, y' \in Y$, (97) yields

[223] Choice implies the quotient map $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ has a left inverse $r : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and we can then set $\sigma = r \circ \hat{\imath}$.

$$d_{\hat{E}}([\sigma(y)]_{\hat{E}}, [\sigma(y')]_{\hat{E}}) \leq d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y, y') \Longleftrightarrow \mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y,y')} \sigma(y') \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}),$$

and the L.H.S. holds because $\hat{\imath}$ is nonexpansive.

Therefore, if ϕ has the shape $\mathbf{Y} \vdash y = y'$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash y =_\varepsilon y'$), by Lemma 140, all $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras satisfy $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) = \sigma(y')$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_\varepsilon \sigma(y')$). By definition of $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ (resp. by (97)), we have

$$\hat{\imath}(y) = [\sigma(y)]_{\hat{E}} = [\sigma(y')]_{\hat{E}} = \hat{\imath}(y') \quad \text{(resp. } d_{\hat{E}}(\hat{\imath}(y), \hat{\imath}(y')) = d_{\hat{E}}([\sigma(y)]_{\hat{E}}, [\sigma(y')]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon\text{)},$$

which means $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ satisfies ϕ. □

As for **Set**, we obtain a functor $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{GMet}$[224] by setting $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$ equal to the unique function making (99) commute. Concretely, we have $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,E}f([t]_{\hat{E}}) = [\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]_{\hat{E}}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow{[-]_{\hat{E}}} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} \\ {\scriptstyle \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y & \xrightarrow[{[-]_{\hat{E}}}]{} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma Y/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} \end{array} \tag{99}$$

Although we do have to check that $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$ is nonexpansive whenever f is.

Lemma 142. *If $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is nonexpansive, then so is $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y}$.*

Proof. This is a direct consequence of Lemma 137. For any $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon &\iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) && \text{by (97)} \\ &\implies \mathbf{X} \vdash \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s) =_\varepsilon \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t) \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) && \text{by Lemma 137} \\ &\iff d_{\hat{E}}([\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s)]_{\hat{E}}, [\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon && \text{by (97)} \\ &\iff d_{\hat{E}}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f[s]_{\hat{E}}, \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f[t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon. && \text{by (99)} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $d_{\hat{E}}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f[s]_{\hat{E}}, \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f[t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}})$. □

We may now define the interpretation of operation symbols syntactically to obtain the term algebra.

Definition 143 (Quantitative term algebra, semantically)**.** The **quantitative term algebra** for $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ on $\mathbf{X}$ is the quantitative Σ-algebra whose underlying space is $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ and whose interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ is defined by[225]

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}([t_1]_{\hat{E}}, \dots, [t_n]_{\hat{E}}) = [\mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n)]_{\hat{E}}. \tag{100}$$

We denote this algebra by $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ or simply $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$.

This should feel very familiar to what we had done in Definition 23.[226] In particular, we still have that $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is a homomorphism from $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ to the underlying algebra of $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$,[227] namely, (101) commutes (recall Footnote 15).

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle \mu^\Sigma_X}\big\downarrow & & \big\downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}} \\ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow[{[-]_{\hat{E}}}]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \end{array} \tag{101}$$

While (101) is a diagram in **Set**, we write $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ instead of the underlying set $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}}$ for better readability. We will keep doing this in the sequel.

Your intuition on $[\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}$ (the interpretation of arbitrary terms) should be exactly the same as the one for $[\![-]\!]_{\mathbb{T}X}$ in *classical* universal algebra: it takes a term in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$, replaces the leaves with a representative term, and gives back the equivalence class of the resulting term. We can also use it to define an analog to flattening.[228] For

[224] In fact, we defined a functor $\mathsf{LSpa} \to \mathbf{GMet}$, but we are interested in its restriction to **GMet**.

[225] This is well-defined by Lemma 130.

[226] In fact, we can make the connection more precise, $\mathbb{T}X$ is constructed by quotienting $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ by the congruence $\equiv_E$ and (the underlying algebra of) $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ by quotienting $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ by the congruence $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ (see Remark 24).

[227] Put $h = [-]_{\hat{E}}$ in (1) to get (100)

[228] Just as we did in (25).

any space $\mathbf{X}$, we let $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ be the unique function making (102) commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{[\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle [-]_{\hat{E}}} \searrow & & \nearrow {\scriptstyle \widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} \\ & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \end{array} \tag{102}$$

Let us show that $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ is nonexpansive and natural.

Lemma 144. *For any space $\mathbf{X}$, $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ is a nonexpansive map $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$.*

Proof. Let $[s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}} \in \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ be such that $d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon$. By (97), this means

$$\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}), \tag{103}$$

namely, the distance between interpretations of s and t is bounded above by ε in all $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras. We need to show $d_{\hat{E}}(\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}([s]_{\hat{E}}), \widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}([t]_{\hat{E}})) \leq \varepsilon$, or using (102),

$$d_{\hat{E}}([\![s]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}, [\![t]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}) \leq \varepsilon. \tag{104}$$

We want to use (97) again to reduce that inequation to a bound on distances between interpretations, but that requires choosing representatives for $[\![s]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}, [\![t]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}} \in \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$.

Instead of choosing them naively, let $s', t' \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ be such that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}(s') = s$ and $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}(t') = t$. In words, s' and t' are the same as s and t where equivalence classes at the leaves are replaced representative terms. Commutativity of (101) implies $[\mu^\Sigma_X(s')]_{\hat{E}} = [\![s]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}$ and similarly for t. We can now use (97) to infer that proving (104) is equivalent to proving

$$\mathbf{X} \vdash \mu^\Sigma_X(s') =_\varepsilon \mu^\Sigma_X(t') \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}). \tag{105}$$

This means we need to show that, for all $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ and $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\mu^\Sigma_X(s')]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A, [\![\mu^\Sigma_X(t')]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A) \leq \varepsilon$.

We already know by (103) that for all $\hat{\sigma} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]^{\hat{\sigma}}_A, [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\sigma}}_A) \leq \varepsilon$, so it suffices to find, for each $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, a nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ such that

$$[\![\mu^\Sigma_X(s')]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A = [\![s]\!]^{\hat{\sigma}}_A \text{ and } [\![\mu^\Sigma_X(t')]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A = [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\sigma}}_A. \tag{106}$$

We define $\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ to be the unique function making (107) commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \hat{\iota}} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \\ {\scriptstyle [-]_{\hat{E}}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A} \\ \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow[\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}]{} & A \end{array} \tag{107}$$

First, $\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}$ is a nonexpansive map $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ because for any $[u]_{\hat{E}}, [v]_{\hat{E}} \in \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$,

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}[u]_{\hat{E}}, \hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}[v]_{\hat{E}}) \overset{(107)}{=} d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\hat{\iota}(u)]\!]_A, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\hat{\iota}(v)]\!]_A) \overset{(7)}{=} d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![u]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A, [\![v]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_A) \leq d_{\hat{E}}([u]_{\hat{E}}, [v]_{\hat{E}}),$$

where the inequation holds by definition of $d_{\hat{E}}$ and because $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies all the equations in $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$.

Second, we can prove that

$$[\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}} \circ \mu_X^{\Sigma} = [\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}, \tag{108}$$

which means (106) holds (by applying both sides of (108) to s' and t'). We pave the following diagram.

Showing (109) commutes:

(a) Apply $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ to (107).

(b) By (12).

(c) By (7).

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}} & & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\
 & \searrow^{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\hat{\iota}} & \text{(a)} & \swarrow^{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}} & \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mu_X^\Sigma} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A]{} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A & \text{(c)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\sigma}_{\hat{\iota}}}} \\
 & \text{(b)} & & \searrow^{[\![-]\!]_A} & \\
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X & & \xrightarrow[{[\![-]\!]_A^{\hat{\iota}}}]{} & & A
\end{array} \tag{109}$$

□

Lemma 145. *The family of maps $\widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{X}}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ is natural in $\mathbf{X}$.*

Proof. We will (for posterity) reproduce the proof we did for Proposition 27, but it is important to note that nothing changes except the notation which now has lots of little hats.

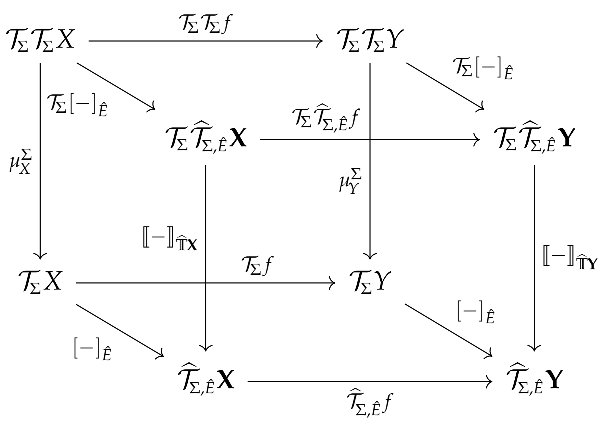
We need to prove that for any function $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$, the square below commutes.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y} \\
{\scriptstyle \widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{X}}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{Y}}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}} \\
\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow[\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y}
\end{array} \tag{110}$$

We can pave the following diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{[-]_{\hat{E}}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y} \\
 & \searrow^{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f} & \text{(a)} & \nearrow_{[-]_{\hat{E}}} & \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle [-]_{\hat{E}}} \;\text{(b)} & \text{(c)} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y} & \text{(d)} & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{Y}}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}} \\
 & \searrow^{[\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}} & & \searrow^{[\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{Y}}} & \\
\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow[\widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{X}}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow[\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y}
\end{array}$$

All of (a), (b) and (d) commute by definition. In more details, (a) is an instance of (99) with $\mathbf{X}$ replaced by $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$, $\mathbf{Y}$ by $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y}$ and f by $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$, and both (b) and (d) are instances of (102). To show (c) commutes, we draw another diagram that looks like a cube and where (c) is the front face. We can show all the other faces commute, and then use the fact that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is surjective (i.e. epic) to conclude that the front face must also commute.[229]



The first diagram we paved implies (110) commutes because $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is surjective. □

[229] In more details, the left and right faces commute by (101), the bottom and top faces commute by (99), and the back face commutes by (5).

The function $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is surjective (i.e. epic) because $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is (it is a canonical quotient map) and functors on **Set** preserve epimorphisms (if we assume the axiom of choice). Thus, it suffices to show that $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}}$ pre-composed with the bottom path or the top path of the front face gives the same result.

Now it is just a matter of going around the cube using the commutativity of the other faces. Here is the complete derivation (we write which face was used as justifications for each step).

$$\begin{aligned}
&\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f \circ [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}} \\
&= \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f \circ [-]_{\hat{E}} \circ \mu^\Sigma_X && \text{left}\\
&= [-]_{\hat{E}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma f \circ \mu^\Sigma_X && \text{bottom}\\
&= [-]_{\hat{E}} \circ \mu^\Sigma_Y \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f && \text{back}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{Y}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f && \text{right}\\
&= [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{Y}} \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f \circ \mathcal{T}_\Sigma[-]_{\hat{E}} && \text{top}
\end{aligned}$$

From the front face of the cube above, we find that for any $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$, $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$ is a homomorphism between the underlying algebras of $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ and $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{Y}$. We already showed $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$ is nonexpansive in Lemma 142, thus it is a homomorphism between the quantitative algebras $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ and $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{Y}$.

We now prove many generalizations of results from Chapter 1[230] in order to show that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ is not just a quantitative Σ-algebra but a $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra.

[230] Contrary to what we did for Lemma 145, we will not reproduce the arguments that can be reused, you can trust us that it would go as smoothly for the other reults.

We can prove, analogously to Lemma 28, that for any $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$, $[\![-]\!]_A$ is a homomorphism between $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{A}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$.

Lemma 146. *For any $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$, the square (111) commutes, and $[\![-]\!]_A$ is a nonexpansive map $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}$.*[231]

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma[\![-]\!]_A} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \\
{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{A}}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_A} \\
\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} & \xrightarrow[{[\![-]\!]_A}]{} & A
\end{array} \tag{111}$$

[231] We use the same convention as in (29) and write $[\![-]\!]_A$ for both maps $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A$ and $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} \to A$. Recall the latter is well-defined because whenever $[s]_{\hat{E}} = [t]_{\hat{E}}$, $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ must satisfy $\mathbf{A} \vdash s = t$, and in particular under the assignment $\mathrm{id}_A : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}$, this yields $[\![s]\!]_A = [\![t]\!]_A$.

Proof. For the commutative square, we can reuse the proof of Lemma 28. For nonexpansiveness, if $d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ must satisfy $\mathbf{A} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$, and in particular under the assignment $\mathrm{id}_A : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}$, this yields $d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A, [\![t]\!]_A) \leq \varepsilon$. □

We can prove, analogously to Lemma 29, that for any $\mathbf{X}$, $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ is a homomorphism from $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ to $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$.

Lemma 147. *For any generalized metric space $\mathbf{X}$, the following square commutes, and $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$*

is a nonexpansive map $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} & \mathcal{T}_\Sigma\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle [\![-]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}}} \\ \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow[\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \end{array} \tag{112}$$

Proof. For the commutative square, we can reuse the proof of Lemma 29. For nonexpansiveness, we have already shown this in Lemma 144. □

Of course, paired with the flattening we also have a map $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ which sends elements $x \in X$ to the class containing x seen as a trivial term, namely,

$$\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}} = \mathbf{X} \xrightarrow{\eta^\Sigma_X} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{[-]_{\hat{E}}} \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}. \tag{113}$$

We need to show $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ is nonexpansive and natural in $\mathbf{X}$.

Lemma 148. *For any space* $\mathbf{X}$, $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$ *is a nonexpansive map* $\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$.

Proof. This is a direct consequence of Lemma 134. For any $x, x' \in X$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\mathbf{X}}(x,x') \le \varepsilon &\implies \mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon x' \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) && \text{by Lemma 134} \\ &\iff d_{\hat{E}}([x]_{\hat{E}}, [x']_{\hat{E}}) \le \varepsilon. && \text{by (97)} \end{aligned}$$

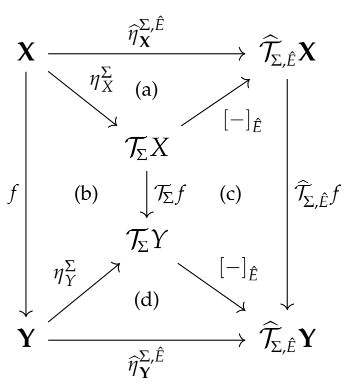
Therefore, $d_{\hat{E}}([x]_{\hat{E}}, [x']_{\hat{E}}) \le d_{\mathbf{X}}(x,x')$. □

Lemma 149. *For any nonexpansive map* $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$, *the following square commutes.*[232]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle f}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f} \\ \mathbf{Y} & \xrightarrow[\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{Y}}]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y} \end{array} \tag{114}$$

[232] Naturality of $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ was easier in **Set** because it is the vertical composition of two natural transformations, η^Σ and $[-]_E$, which do not have counterparts in **GMet**.

Proof. We pave the following diagram.



(115)

Showing (115) commutes:

(a) Definition of $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ (113).

(b) Naturality of η^Σ (3).

(c) Definition of $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f$ (99).

(d) Definition of $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ (113).

□

We also have the following technical lemma analogous to Lemma 30.

Lemma 150. *For any generalized metric space* $\mathbf{X}$, $[\![-]\!]^{\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}} = [-]_{\hat{E}}$.[233]

[233] We can reuse the proof for Lemma 30.

As a corollary (analogous to Lemma 31), we get that for any quantitative equation ϕ with context $\mathbf{X}$, ϕ belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ if and only if the algebra $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ satisfies it under the assignment $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$.

Lemma 151. *Let* ϕ *be an equation with context* $\mathbf{X}$, $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ *if and only if* $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X} \vDash^{\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} \phi$.

The next result, analogous to Lemma 32, tells us that $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ and $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ behave like the unit and multiplication of a monad.

Lemma 152. *The following diagram commutes.*[234]

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & \xleftarrow{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ & \searrow^{\mathrm{id}_{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}}} & \downarrow \widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}} & \swarrow^{\mathrm{id}_{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}}} & \\ & & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} & & \end{array}$$

[234] We can reuse the proof of Lemma 32, although when using naturality of $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ in **Set**, we replace it by (99) which is not formally a naturality property (because $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$ is not a functor on **GMet**).

Finally, we can show that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ is $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra (analogous to Proposition 35).

Proposition 153. *For any space* $\mathbf{A}$, *the term algebra* $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$ *satisfies all the equations in* $\hat{E}$.

Proof. Let $\phi \in \hat{E}$ be an equation with context $\mathbf{X}$ and $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$ be a nonexpansive assignment. We factor $\hat{\imath}$ into[235]

$$\hat{\imath} = X \xrightarrow{\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}} \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}X \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\hat{\imath}} \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} \xrightarrow{\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{A}}} \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}.$$

[235] This factoring is correct because

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\imath} &= \mathrm{id}_{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}} \circ \hat{\imath} \\ &= \widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{A}} \circ \widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}} \circ \hat{\imath} && \text{Lemma 152} \\ &= \widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{A}} \circ \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\hat{\imath} \circ \widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}. && \text{naturality of } \widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}} \end{aligned}$$

Now, Lemma 151 says that ϕ is satisfied in $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ under the assignment $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}}$. We also know by Lemma 125 that homomorphisms preserve satisfaction, so we can apply it twice using the facts that $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\hat{\imath}$ and $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{A}}$ are homomorphisms (the former was shown after Lemma 145 and the latter in Lemma 147) to conclude that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{A}$ satisfies ϕ under $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{A}} \circ \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\hat{\imath} \circ \widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}} = \hat{\imath}$. ☐

We end this section just like we ended §1.1 by showing that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ is the free $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra.

Proposition 154. *For any space* $\mathbf{X}$, *the term algebra* $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}X$ *is the free* $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$*-algebra on* $\mathbf{X}$.

Proof. Note that the morphism witnessing freeness of $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ is $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}_{\mathbf{X}} : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$. As expected, the proof goes exactly like for Proposition 38 except, we have to show that when $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is nonexpansive, so is $f^* : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$. This follows by the following derivation.[236]

[236] We implicitly use nonexpansiveness of f in the second step, where f is used as a nonexpansive assignment.

$$\begin{aligned} d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon &\iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) && \text{by (97)} \\ &\implies d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]^f_A, [\![t]\!]^f_A) \leq \varepsilon && \hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\iff d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s)]\!]_A, [\![\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)_A]\!]) && \text{by (7)}\\
&\iff d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(s)]_{\hat{E}}]\!]_A, [\![[\mathcal{T}_\Sigma f(t)]_{\hat{E}}]\!]_A) && \text{by Footnote 231}\\
&\iff d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} f[s]_{\hat{E}}]\!]_A, [\![\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} f[t]_{\hat{E}}]\!]_A) && \text{by (99)}\\
&\iff d_{\mathbf{A}}(f^*[s]_{\hat{E}}, f^*[t]_{\hat{E}}) && \text{definition of } f^* \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

3.2 Quantitative Equational Logic

It is now time to introduce the quantitative equational logic (QEL), which you can think of as both a generalization and an extension of equational logic. It is a generalization when instantiating $\mathsf{L} = 1$ as explained in Example 157. It is an extension because all the rules of equational logic are valid in QEL when replacing the contexts with discrete spaces. Figure 3.1 displays the inference rules of **quantitative equational logic**. The notion of **derivation** is straightforwardly adapted from Definition 39. Let us explain the rules while proving soundness.

$$\frac{}{\mathbf{X} \vdash t = t}\ \textsc{Refl} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t}{\mathbf{X} \vdash t = s}\ \textsc{Symm} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \qquad \mathbf{X} \vdash t = u}{\mathbf{X} \vdash s = u}\ \textsc{Trans}$$

$$\frac{\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma \qquad \forall 1 \leq i \leq n, \mathbf{X} \vdash s_i = t_i}{\mathbf{X} \vdash \mathsf{op}(s_1, \ldots, s_n) = \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n)}\ \textsc{Cong}$$

$$\frac{\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \qquad \mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t \qquad \forall y, y' \in Y, \mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{X}}(y,y')} \sigma(y')}{\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)}\ \textsc{Sub}$$

$$\frac{}{\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\top t}\ \textsc{Top} \qquad \frac{d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x') = \varepsilon}{\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_\varepsilon x'}\ \textsc{Vars} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \qquad \varepsilon \leq \varepsilon'}{\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{\varepsilon'} t}\ \textsc{Max}$$

$$\frac{\forall i, \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{\varepsilon_i} t \qquad \varepsilon = \inf_i \varepsilon_i}{\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t}\ \textsc{Cont} \qquad \frac{\phi \in E_{\mathbf{GMet}}}{\phi}\ \textsc{GMet}$$

$$\frac{\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \qquad \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon u}{\mathbf{X} \vdash t =_\varepsilon u}\ \textsc{CompL} \qquad \frac{\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \qquad \mathbf{X} \vdash u =_\varepsilon s}{\mathbf{X} \vdash u =_\varepsilon t}\ \textsc{CompR}$$

$$\frac{\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \qquad \mathbf{Y} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \qquad \forall y, y' \in Y, \mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{X}}(y,y')} \sigma(y')}{\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) =_\varepsilon \sigma^*(t)}\ \textsc{SubQ}$$

Figure 3.1: Rules of quantitative equational logic over the signature Σ and the complete lattice L, where $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{Y}$ can be any L-space, and s, t, u, s_i and t_i can be any terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. As indicated in the premises of the rules Cong, Sub and SubQ, they can be instantiated for any n-ary operation symbol and for any function σ respectively.

Given any set of quantitative equations $\hat{E}$, we denote by $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$ the class of equations that can be proven from $\hat{E}$ in quantitative equational logic, i.e. $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}'(E)$ if and only if there is a derivation of ϕ in QEL with axioms $\hat{E}$.

Our goal for the rest of this section is to prove that $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E}) = \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$. We say that QEL is sound and complete for $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras. Less concisely, soundness means that whenever QEL proves an equation ϕ with axioms $\hat{E}$, then ϕ is satisfied by all $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras, and completeness says that whenever an equation ϕ is satisfied by all $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebras, then there is a derivation of ϕ in QEL with axioms $\hat{E}$.

Just like for equational logic, all the rules in Figure 3.1 are sound for any fixed quantitative algebra meaning that if $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies the equations on top of a rule, it must satisfy the conclusion of that rule.

The first four rules say that equality is an equivalence relation that is preserved by the operations, we showed they were sound in Lemmas 127–130. More formally, we can define (for any $\mathbf{X}$) a binary relation $\equiv'_{\hat{E}}$ on Σ-terms[237] that contains the pair (s,t) whenever $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ can be proven in QEL: for any $s,t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

$$s \equiv'_{\hat{E}} t \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E}). \tag{116}$$

[237] Again, we omit the L-space $\mathbf{X}$ from the notation.

Then, we can show $\equiv'_{\hat{E}}$ is a congruence relation.[238]

[238] We will denote with $\wr - \int_{\hat{E}}$ the canonical quotient map $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X / \equiv'_{\hat{E}}$.

Lemma 155. *For any* L*-space* $\mathbf{X}$*, the relation* $\equiv'_{\hat{E}}$ *is reflexive, symmetric, transitive, and for any* $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ *and* $s_1, \dots, s_n, t_1, \dots, t_n \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$*,*

$$\forall 1 \leq i \leq n, s_i \equiv'_{\hat{E}} t_i \implies \mathsf{op}(s_1, \dots, s_n) \equiv'_{\hat{E}} \mathsf{op}(t_1, \dots, t_n). \tag{117}$$

Skipping SUB for now, the TOP rule says that $\top$ is an upper bound for all distances since it is the maximum element of L. We showed it is sound in Lemma 133.

The VARS rule is, in a sense, the quantitative version of REFL. It reflects the fact that assignments of variables are nonexpansive with respect to the distance in the context. Indeed, $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$ is nonexpansive precisely when, for all $x, x' \in X$,

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\llbracket x \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\iota}}, \llbracket x' \rrbracket_A^{\hat{\iota}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}(\hat{\iota}(x), \hat{\iota}(x')) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x').$$

How is this related to REFL? Letting $t = x \in X$, REFL says that for any assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, $\hat{\iota}(x) = \hat{\iota}(x)$. This seems trivial, but it hides a deeper fact that the assignment must be deterministic (a functional relation), as it cannot assign two different values to the same input.[239] So just like REFL imposes the constraint of determinism on assignments, VARS imposes nonexpansiveness. We showed VARS is sound in Lemma 134.

[239] A similar thing happens for CONG which says that the interpretation of operation symbols are deterministic. These remarks already made sense in equational logic.

The rules MAX and CONT should remind you of the definition of L-structure (Definition 83). Very briefly, they ensure that equipping the set of terms over X with the relations $R_\varepsilon^{\mathbf{X}} \subseteq \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \times \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ defined by

$$s \, R_\varepsilon^{\mathbf{X}} \, t \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E}), \tag{118}$$

yields an L-structure.[240] We showed they are sound in Lemmas 135 and 136. Note that TOP is an instance of CONT with the empty index set (recall that $\top = \inf \varnothing$).

[240] Monotonicity and continuity hold by MAX and CONT respectively.

The soundness of GMET is a consequence of the definition of quantitative algebra which requires the underlying space to satisfy all the equations in $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$.

COMPL and COMPR guarantee that the L-structure we just defined factors through the quotient $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X / \equiv'_{\hat{E}}$.[241] We showed they are sound in Lemmas 131 and 132.

[241] i.e. the following relation is well-defined:

$$\wr s \int_{\hat{E}} R_\varepsilon^{\mathbf{X}} \wr t \int_{\hat{E}} \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E}), \tag{119}$$

Finally, we get to the substitutions SUB and SUBQ, they are the same except for replacing $=$ with $=_\varepsilon$. Recall that the substitution rule in equational logic is

$$\frac{\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \qquad Y \vdash s = t}{X \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)},$$

which morally means that variables in the context Y are universally quantified. In SUB and SUBQ, there is an additional condition on σ which arises because the variables in Y are *not* universally quantified, an assignment $Y \to A$ is considered in the definition of satisfaction only if it is nonexpansive from $\mathbf{Y}$ to $\mathbf{A}$.[242]

We proved SUB and SUBQ are sound in Lemma 140, and we can compare with the proof of soundness of SUB in equational logic (Lemma 34) to find the same key argument: the interpretation of $\sigma^*(t)$ under some assignment $\hat{\iota}$ is equal to the interpretation of t under the assignment $\hat{\iota}_\sigma$ sending y to the interpretation of $\sigma(y)$ under $\hat{\iota}$. Since satisfaction for quantitative algebras only deals with nonexpansive assignments, we needed to check that $\hat{\iota}_\sigma$ is nonexpansive whenever $\hat{\iota}$ is, and this was true thanks to the condition on σ. Let us give an illustrative example of why the extra conditions are necessary.

Example 156. We work over $\mathsf{L} = [0,1]$, $\mathbf{GMet} = \mathbf{Met}$, and an empty theory $\Sigma = \emptyset$ and $\hat{E} = \emptyset$. Let $\mathbf{Y} = \{y_0, y_1\}$ with $d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y_0, y_1) = d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y_1, y_0) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\mathbf{X} = \{x_0, x_1\}$ with $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x_0, x_1) = d_{\mathbf{X}}(x_1, x_0) = 1$.[243] We consider the algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ whose underlying space is $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{X}$ (since Σ is empty that is the only data required to define an algebra). It satisfies the equation $\mathbf{Y} \vdash y_0 = y_1$ because any nonexpansive assignment of $\mathbf{Y}$ into $\mathbf{A}$ must identify y_0 and y_1 (there are no distinct points with distance less than $\frac{1}{2}$).

Take the substitution $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ defined by $y_0 \mapsto x_0$ and $y_1 \mapsto x_1$, we can check $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ does not satisfy $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(y_0) = \sigma^*(y_1)$.[244] This means that σ cannot satisfty the extra conditions in SUB. Indeed, $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ does not satisfy $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y_0) =_{\frac{1}{2}} \sigma(y_1)$ (take the assignment $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{X}}$ again).

Example 157 (Recovering equational logic)**.**

Definition 158 (Quantitative term algebra, syntactically)**.** The new quantitative term algebra for $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ on $\mathbf{X}$ is the quantitative Σ-algebra whose underlying space is $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv'_{\hat{E}}}$ equipped with the L-relation corresponding to the L-structure defined in (119),[245] and whose interpretation of $\mathsf{op} : n \in \Sigma$ is defined by[246]

$$[\![\mathsf{op}]\!]_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}}(\wr t_1 \int_{\hat{E}}, \ldots, \wr t_n \int_{\hat{E}}) = \wr \mathsf{op}(t_1, \ldots, t_n) \int_{\hat{E}}. \tag{121}$$

We denote this algebra by $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ or simply $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$.

We will prove this alternative definition of the term algebra coincides with $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$. First, we have to show that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ belongs to $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ like we did for $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}X$ in Proposition 153, and we state a technical lemma before that.

Lemma 159. *Let $\iota : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv'_E}$ be any assignment. For any function $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ satisfying $\wr \sigma(y) \int_{\hat{E}} = \iota(y)$ for all $y \in Y$, we have $[\![-]\!]^\iota_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'X} = \wr \sigma^*(-) \int_{\hat{E}}$.*[247]

Proposition 160. *For any space $\mathbf{X}$, $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ satisfies all the equations in $\hat{E}$.*

Proof. Let $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$) belong to $\hat{E}$ and $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{Y} \to (\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv'_{\hat{E}}}, d'_{\hat{E}})$ be a nonexpansive assignment. By the axiom of choice,[248] there is a function $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ satisfying $\wr \sigma(y) \int_{\hat{E}} = \hat{\iota}(y)$ for all $y \in Y$. Thanks to Lemma 159, it is enough to show $\wr \sigma^*(s) \int_{\hat{E}} = \wr \sigma^*(t) \int_{\hat{E}}$ (resp. $d'_{\hat{E}}(\wr \sigma^*(s) \int_{\hat{E}}, \wr \sigma^*(t) \int_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon$).[249]

Equivalently, by definition of $\wr - \int_{\hat{E}}$ and $\mathfrak{Q}\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{h}'(\hat{E})$, we can just exhibit a derivation of $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) = \sigma^*(t)$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma^*(s) =_\varepsilon \sigma^*(t)$) in QEL with axioms $\hat{E}$. That equation

242 Put differently, the variables are universally quantified subject to certain constraints on their distances relative to the context $\mathbf{Y}$.

243 We can see both $\mathbf{Y}$ and $\mathbf{X}$ as subspaces of $[0,1]$ with the Euclidean metric, where e.g. y_0 is embedded as 0 and y_1 as $\frac{1}{2}$, and x_0 is embedded as 0 and x_1 as 1.

244 That equation is $\mathbf{X} \vdash x_0 = x_1$ and with the assignment $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{X}} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{A}$, we have

$$[\![x_0]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{X}}} = x_0 \neq x_1 = [\![x_1]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{X}}}.$$

245 Explicitly, it is the L-relation $d'_{\hat{E}}$ that satisfies

$$d'_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{Q}\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{h}'(\hat{E}). \tag{120}$$

246 This is well-defined (i.e. invariant under change of representative) by (117).

247 The proof goes as in the classical case (Lemma 44). We do not even need to ask ι to be nonexpansive, but we will use the result with a nonexpansive assignment.

248 Choice implies the quotient map $\wr - \int_{\hat{E}}$ has a left inverse $r : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/{\equiv'_{\hat{E}}} \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, and we can then set $\sigma = r \circ \hat{\iota}$.

249 By Lemma 159, it implies

$$[\![s]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}} = \wr \sigma^*(s) \int_{\hat{E}} = \wr \sigma^*(t) \int_{\hat{E}} = [\![t]\!]^{\iota}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'X},$$

resp. $d'_{\hat{E}}([\![s]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}}, [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}}) = d'_{\hat{E}}(\wr \sigma^*(s) \int_{\hat{E}}, \wr \sigma^*(t) \int_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon$

and since $\hat{\iota}$ was arbitrary, we conclude that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ satisfies $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$).

can be proven with the Sub (resp. SubQ) rule instantiated with $\sigma : Y \to \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and the equation $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{Y} \vdash s =_\varepsilon$) which is an axiom, but we need derivations showing σ satisfies the side conditions of the substitution rules. This follows from nonexpansiveness of $\hat{\imath}$ because for any $y, y' \in Y$, we know that

$$d_{\hat{E}}(\wr \sigma(y) \int_{\hat{E}}, \wr \sigma(y) \int_{\hat{E}}) = d_{\hat{E}}(\hat{\imath}(y), \hat{\imath}(y')) \leq d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y, y'),$$

which means by (120) that $\mathbf{X} \vdash \sigma(y) =_{d_{\mathbf{Y}}(y,y')} \sigma(y)$ belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$. ☐

Completeness of quantitative equational logic readily follows.

Theorem 161 (Completeness)**.** *If $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, then $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$.*

Proof. Let $\phi \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ and $\mathbf{X}$ be its context. By Proposition 160 and definition of $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, we know that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X} \vDash \phi$. In particular, $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ satisfies ϕ under the assignment

$$\hat{\imath} = \mathbf{X} \xrightarrow{\eta^\Sigma_X} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{\wr - \int_{\hat{E}}} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X / {\equiv'_{\hat{E}}},$$

which is nonexpansive by Vars.[250]

Moreover with $\sigma = \eta^\Sigma_X$, we can show σ satisfies the hypothesis of Lemma 159 and $\sigma^* = \mathrm{id}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X}$,[251] thus we conclude

- if $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$: $\wr s \int_{\hat{E}} = [\![s]\!]^{\hat{\imath}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}} = [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\imath}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}} = \wr t \int_{\hat{E}}$, and
- if $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$: $d'_{\hat{E}}(\wr s \int_{\hat{E}}, \wr t \int_{\hat{E}}) = d'_{\hat{E}}([\![s]\!]^{\hat{\imath}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}}, [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\imath}}_{\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}}) \leq \varepsilon$.

By definition of $\wr - \int_{\hat{E}}$ and $d'_{\hat{E}}$, this implies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$) belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$. ☐

[250] Explicitly, Vars means $\mathbf{X} \vdash x =_{d_{\mathbf{X}}(x,x')} x'$ belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$, hence, (120) implies

$$d'_{\hat{E}}(\wr x \int_{\hat{E}}, \wr x' \int_{\hat{E}}) \leq d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, x').$$

[251] We defined $\hat{\imath}$ precisely to have $\wr \sigma(x) \int_{\hat{E}} = \hat{\imath}(x)$. To show $\sigma^* = \eta^\Sigma_X{}^*$ is the identity, use (33) and the fact that $\mu^\Sigma \cdot \eta^\Sigma \mathcal{T}_\Sigma = \mathbb{1}_{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma}$ (it holds by definition (4)).

Note that because $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ and $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ were defined in the same way in terms of $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ and $\mathfrak{QTh}'(\hat{E})$ respectively, and since we have proven the latter to be equal, we obtain that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ and $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}'\mathbf{X}$ are the same algebra. In the sequel, we will work with $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}\mathbf{X}$ mostly but we may use the fact that $s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t$ (resp. $d_{\hat{E}}(s, t) \leq \varepsilon$) if and only if there is a derivation of $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ (resp. $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$) in QEL.

3.3 Quantitative Algebraic Presentations

In order to obtain a more categorical understanding of quantitative algebras, a first step is to show that the functor $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{GMet}$ we constructed is actually a monad.

Proposition 162. *The functor $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{GMet}$ defines a monad on $\mathbf{GMet}$ with unit $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ and multiplication $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$. We call it the **term monad** for $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$.*

Proof. A first proof uses a standard result of category theory. Since we showed that $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$ is the free $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$-algebra on $\mathbf{A}$ for every space $\mathbf{A}$ (Proposition 154), we obtain a monad sending $\mathbf{A}$ to the underlying space of $\widehat{\mathbb{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$, i.e. $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$.[252]

One could also follow the proof we gave for **Set** and explicitly show that $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ and $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ obey the laws for the unit and multiplication (most of the work having been done earlier in this chapter). ☐

[252] The unit is automatically $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$, but some computations are needed to show the multiplication is $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$.

What is arguably more important is that quantitative algebras for $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ correspond to $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$-algebras. We will construct an isomorphism between $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ and $\mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}})$ by relying on the isomorphism $P : \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma) \cong \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma) : P^{-1}$ that we defined in Proposition 56,[253] the forgetful functor $U : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma)$ that sends $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ to the underlying algebra $\mathbb{A}$, and the functor $\mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}) \to \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma)$ we define below.

[253] Take the statement of Proposition 56 with $E = \emptyset$.

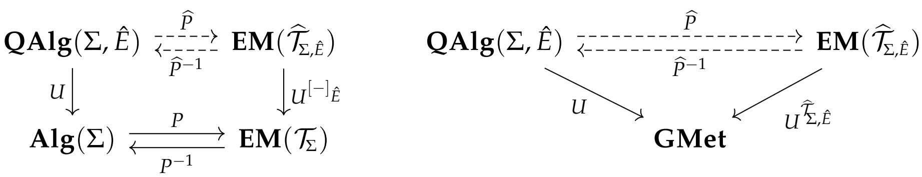
Lemma 163. *For any $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$-algebra (A, α), the map $U\alpha \circ [-]_{\hat{E}} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A$ is a $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$-algebra. Furthermore, this defines a functor $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}} : \mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}) \to \mathbf{EM}(\mathcal{T}_\Sigma)$.*

Proof. Apply Proposition 66 after checking that $(U, [-]_{\hat{E}})$ is monad functor from $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ to $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$.[254] □

[254] The appropriate diagrams (53) and (54) commute by (113) and a combination of (101) and (102).

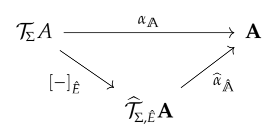
Theorem 164. *There is an isomorphism $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \cong \mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}})$.*

Proof. In the diagram below, we already have the functors drawn with solid arrows, and we want to construct $\widehat{P}$ and $\widehat{P}^{-1}$ drawn with dashed arrows before proving they are inverses to each other.



A (meaningful) sidequest for us is to make the diagrams above commute, namely, the underlying $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$-algebra of $\widehat{P}\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ should be $P\mathbb{A}$ and the underlying space of $\widehat{P}\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ should be the underlying space of $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$, and similarly for $\widehat{P}^{-1}$. It turns out this completely determines our functors, up to some quick checks. We will move between spaces and their underlying sets without indicating it by $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$.

Given $\hat{\mathbb{A}} \in \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$, we look at the underlying Σ-algebra $\mathbb{A}$, apply P to it to get $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A$ which sends a term t to its interpretation $[\![t]\!]_A$, and we need to check that it factors through $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ and a nonexpansive map $\widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{A}}} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$ as in (122).



(122)

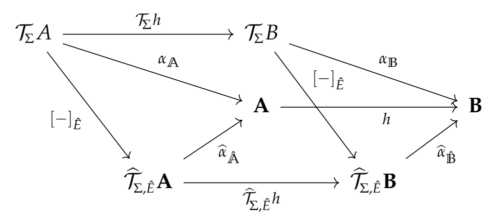
First, $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}}$ is well-defined on terms modulo $\hat{E}$ because if $s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{A} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, and this in turn means (taking the assignment $\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{A}} : \mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}$):

$$\alpha_{\mathbb{A}}(s) = [\![s]\!]_A = [\![s]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{A}}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{A}}} = [\![t]\!]_A = \alpha_{\mathbb{A}}(t).$$

Next, the factor we obtain $\widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{A}}} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A/{\equiv_{\hat{E}}} \to A$ is nonexpansive from $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A}$ to $\mathbf{A}$. Indeed, if $d_{\hat{E}}([s]_{\hat{E}}, [t]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon$, then $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ satisfies $\mathbf{A} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, and this means:

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}(\widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{A}}}[s]_{\hat{E}}, \widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{A}}}[t]_{\hat{E}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}(\alpha_{\mathbb{A}}(s), \alpha_{\mathbb{A}}(t)) = d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A, [\![t]\!]_A) = d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{A}}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\mathrm{id}_{\mathbf{A}}}) \leq \varepsilon.$$

Finally, if $h : \hat{\mathbb{A}} \to \hat{\mathbb{B}}$ is a homomorphism, then by definition it is nonexpansive $\mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$ and it commutes with $[\![-]\!]_A$ and $[\![-]\!]_B$. The latter means it commutes with $\alpha_{\mathbb{A}}$ and $\alpha_{\mathbb{B}}$, which in turn means it commutes with $\widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{A}}}$ and $\widehat{\alpha}_{\hat{\mathbb{B}}}$ because $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is epic (see (123)). We obtain our functor $\widehat{P} : \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}) \to \mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}})$.



(123)

The top face of (123) commutes because h is a homomorphism, the back face commutes by (99), and the side faces commute by (122). Thus, the bottom face commutes because $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is epic.

Given a $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$-algebra $\widehat{\alpha} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{A}$, we look at the $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma$-algebra

$$U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha} = U\widehat{\alpha} \circ [-]_{\hat{E}} : \mathcal{T}_\Sigma A \to A$$

obtained via Lemma 163, then we apply P^{-1} to get the Σ-algebra $(A, [\![-]\!]_{U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha}})$. Since $\mathbf{A} = (A, d_{\mathbf{A}})$ is a generalized metric space (because $\widehat{\alpha}$ belongs to $\mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}})$), we obtain a quantitative algebra $\hat{\mathbb{A}}_{\widehat{\alpha}} = (A, [\![-]\!]_{U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha}}, d_{\mathbf{A}})$, and we need to check it satisfies the equations in $\hat{E}$.

Recall from the proof of Proposition 56 that the interpreting terms in $\hat{\mathbb{A}}_{\widehat{\alpha}}$ is the same thing as applying $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha} = U\widehat{\alpha} \circ [-]_{\hat{E}}$. Therefore, given any L-space $\mathbf{X}$, nonexpansive assignment $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{A}$, and $t \in \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}X$, we have

$$[\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} \overset{(7)}{=} [\![\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t)]\!]_A = \widehat{\alpha}[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t)]_{\hat{E}}.$$

Now, if $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \hat{E}$, we also have $\mathbf{A} \vdash \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(s) = \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t) \in \mathfrak{Q}\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{h}(\hat{E})$ by Lemma 137, which means

$$[\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}} = \widehat{\alpha}[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(s)]_{\hat{E}} = \widehat{\alpha}[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t)]_{\hat{E}} = [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}.$$

Similarly for $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{\varepsilon} t \in \hat{E}$, Lemma 137 means $\mathbf{A} \vdash \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(s) =_{\varepsilon} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t) \in \mathfrak{Q}\mathfrak{T}\mathfrak{h}(\hat{E})$, so[255]

$$d_{\mathbf{A}}([\![s]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}, [\![t]\!]_A^{\hat{\imath}}) = d_{\mathbf{A}}(\widehat{\alpha}[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(s)]_{\hat{E}}, \widehat{\alpha}[\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t)]_{\hat{E}}) \leq d_{\hat{E}}([\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(s)]_{\hat{E}}, [\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma}\hat{\imath}(t)]_{\hat{E}}) \leq \varepsilon.$$

Finally, if $h : (\mathbf{A}, \widehat{\alpha}) \to (\mathbf{B}, \widehat{\beta})$ is $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$-homomorphism, then by definition, it is nonexpansive $\mathbf{A} \to \mathbf{B}$, and by Lemma 163 it commutes with $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha}$ and $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\beta}$ which means it is a homomorphism of the underlying algebras of $\hat{\mathbb{A}}_{\widehat{\alpha}}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{B}}_{\widehat{\beta}}$. We conclude it is also a homomorphism between the quantitative algebras $\hat{\mathbb{A}}$ and $\hat{\mathbb{B}}$.[256] We obtain our functor $\widehat{P}^{-1} : \mathbf{EM}(\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}) \to \mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$.

The diagrams at the start of the proof commute by construction, and P and P^{-1} are inverses by Proposition 56. That is enough to conclude that $\widehat{P}$ and $\widehat{P}^{-1}$ are also inverses. Indeed, by commutativity of the triangle, $\widehat{P}$ and $\widehat{P}^{-1}$ preserve the underlying spaces, and if we fix a space $\mathbf{A}$, the forgetful functors U and $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}$ are injective.[257] Then, still with a fixed space $\mathbf{A}$, by commutativity of the square, we have

$$U\widehat{P}^{-1}\widehat{P}\hat{\mathbb{A}} = P^{-1}U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{P}\hat{\mathbb{A}} = P^{-1}PU\hat{\mathbb{A}} = U\hat{\mathbb{A}}, \text{ and}$$
$$U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{P}\widehat{P}^{-1}\widehat{\alpha} = PU\widehat{P}^{-1}\widehat{\alpha} = PP^{-1}U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha} = U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}\widehat{\alpha},$$

with which we can conclude by injectivity of U and $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}$. □

[255] The first inequation holds by nonexpansiveness of $\widehat{\alpha}$ and the second by definition of $d_{\hat{E}}$ (97).

[256] Recall that homomorphisms between quantitative algebras are just nonexpansive homomorphisms.

[257] For U, it is clear because it only forgets the L-relation. For $U^{[-]_{\hat{E}}}$, it is also not to hard to see, and it is because $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is faithful and $[-]_{\hat{E}}$ is epic.

This motivates the following definition.

Definition 165 (**GMet** presentation)**.** Let M be a monad on **GMet**, a **quantitative algebraic presentation** of M is signature Σ and a set of quantitative equations $\hat{E}$ along with a monad isomorphism $\rho : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} \cong M$. We also say M is presented by $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$.

3.4 Lifting Presentations

Most examples of **GMet** presentations in the literature [MPP16, MV20, **?**, MSV22] (including the above) are built on top of a **Set** presentation. In summary, there is a monad M on **Set** with a known algebraic presentation (Σ, E) (e.g. $\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{ne}}$ and semilattices or $\mathcal{D}$ and convex algebras) and a lifting of every space (X, d) to a space $(MX, \widehat{d})$. Then, a quantitative algebraic theory $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$ over the same signature is generated by counterparts to the equations in E as well as new quantitative equations to model the liftings. Finally, it is shown how the theory axiomatises the lifting, namely the **GMet** monad induced by the theory is isomorphic to a monad whose action on objects is the assignment $(X, d) \mapsto (MX, \widehat{d})$.

In this section, we prove our main result (**??**) which makes this process more automatic and gives necessary and sufficient conditions for when it can actually be done. Throughout, we fix a monad (M, η, μ) on **Set** and an algebraic theory (Σ, E) presenting M via the isomorphism $\rho : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \cong M$. We first give multiple definitions to make precise what we mean by *lifting*.

Definition 166 (Liftings)**.** We have three different notions of lifting that we introduce from weakest to strongest.

- A **mere lifting** of M to **GMet** is an assignment $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}}) \mapsto (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$ defining a generalized metric on MX for every generalized metric on X.[258]

- A **functor lifting** of M to **GMet** is a functor $\widehat{M} : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{GMet}$ that makes the square below commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{GMet} & \xrightarrow{\widehat{M}} & \mathbf{GMet} \\ {\scriptstyle U}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle U} \\ \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow[M]{} & \mathbf{Set} \end{array} \tag{124}$$

  Note in particular that for every space $\mathbf{X}$, the carrier of $\widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$ is MX, so we obtain a mere lifting $\mathbf{X} \mapsto \widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$. Furthermore, given a nonexpansive map $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$, the underlying function of $\widehat{M}f$ is Mf, i.e. $Mf : \widehat{M}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{Y}$ is nonexpansive.

  In fact, if we have a mere lifting $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}}) \mapsto (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$ such that for every nonexpansive map $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$, $Mf : (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) \to (MY, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{Y}}})$ is nonexpansive, we automatically get a functor lifting $\widehat{M}$ whose action on objects is given by the mere lifting.[259] We conclude that functor liftings are just mere liftings with that additional condition.

- A **monad lifting** of M to **GMet** is a monad $(\widehat{M}, \widehat{\eta}, \widehat{\mu})$ on **GMet** such that $\widehat{M}$ is a functor lifting of M and furthermore $U\widehat{\eta} = \eta U$ and $U\widehat{\mu} = \mu U$. These two equations mean that the underlying function of the unit and multiplication $\widehat{\eta}_{\mathbf{X}}$ and $\widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{X}}$ are η_X and μ_X for any space $\mathbf{X}$. In particular, the maps

$$\eta_X : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{X} \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_X : \widehat{M}\widehat{M}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$$

  are nonexpansive for every $\mathbf{X}$. In fact, since U is faithful, that completely determines $\widehat{\eta}_{\mathbf{X}}$ and $\widehat{\mu}_{\mathbf{X}}$, and we conclude as before that a monad lifting is just a mere lifting with three additional conditions:

  1. $Mf : (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) \to (MY, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{Y}}})$ is nonexpansive if $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$ is nonexpansive,

[258] The name *lifting* more commonly refers to what we call functor lifting or monad lifting below which require more conditions than a mere lifting, hence the name.

[259] The action on morphisms is prescribed by (124), namely, the underlying function of $\widehat{M}f$ is Mf which is nonexpansive by hypothesis, and since U is faithful, that determines $\widehat{M}f$.

2. $\eta_X : (X, d_{\mathbf{X}}) \to (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$ is nonexpansive for every $\mathbf{X}$, and
3. $\mu_X : (MMX, \widehat{\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}}) \to (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$ is nonexpansive for every $\mathbf{X}$.

In practice, when defining a monad lifting, we will define a mere lifting and check Items 1–3. Let us give an example.

Example 167. Given an L-space (X, d), we define an L-relation $\widehat{d}$ on $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X$ as follows: for any non-empty finite $S, S' \subseteq X$,

$$\widehat{d}(S, S') = \begin{cases} \bot & S = S' \\ d(x,y) & S = \{x\} \text{ and } S' = \{y\} \\ \top & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}. \tag{125}$$

This defines a mere lifting of $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}$ to $\mathbf{LSpa}$ given by $(X, d) \mapsto (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \widehat{d})$. Viewing $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}$ as modelling nondeterminism (recall **??**), this lifting could model a system where nondeterministic processes cannot be meaningfully compared (they are put at maximum distance) unless the sets of possible outcomes are the same (distance is minimal) or both processes are deterministic (distance is inherited from the distance between the only possible outcomes).

To show this is a monad lifting of $(\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}, \eta, \mu)$,[260] it is enough to prove Lemmas 168–170.

[260] The unit and multiplication of $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}}$ were defined in Example 50.

Lemma 168. *If $f : (X, d) \to (Y, \Delta)$ is nonexpansive, then so is the direct image function $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} f : (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \widehat{d}) \to (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} Y, \widehat{\Delta})$.*[261]

[261] We write $f(S)$ instead of $\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} f(S)$ for better readability.

Proof. Let $S, S' \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X$. If $S = S'$, then $f(S) = f(S')$, so

$$\widehat{\Delta}(f(S), f(S')) = \bot \leq \bot = \widehat{d}(S, S').$$

If $S = \{x\}$ and $S' = \{y\}$, then $f(S) = \{f(x)\}$ and $f(S') = \{f(y)\}$, so[262]

[262] The inequation holds because f is nonexpansive.

$$\widehat{\Delta}(f(S), f(S')) = \Delta(f(x), f(y)) \leq d(x,y) = \widehat{d}(S, S').$$

Otherwise, $\widehat{d}(S, S') = \top$ and $\widehat{\Delta}(f(S), f(S'))$ is always less or equal to $\top$. □

Lemma 169. *For any (X, d), the map $\eta_X : (X, d) \to (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \widehat{d})$ is nonexpansive.*

Proof. Recall that $\eta_X(x) = \{x\}$. For any $x, y \in X$, $\widehat{d}(\{x\}, \{y\}) = d(x,y)$, so η_X is even an isometry. □

Lemma 170. *For any (X, d), the map $\mu_X : (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \widehat{\widehat{d}}) \to (\mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X, \widehat{d})$ is nonexpansive.*

Proof. Recall that $\mu_X(F) = \cup F$ and let $F, F' \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} \mathcal{P}_{\text{ne}} X$. The case $F = F'$ is dealt with like in Lemma 168, it implies $\cup F = \cup F'$, hence the distances on both sides are $\bot$. If $F = \{S\}$ and $F' = \{S'\}$, $\cup F = S$ and $\cup F' = S'$, then

$$\widehat{d}(\mu_X(F), \mu_X(F')) = \widehat{d}(S, S') = \widehat{\widehat{d}}(\{S\}, \{S'\}).$$

Otherwise, $\widehat{\widehat{d}}(F, F') = \top$, so the inequality holds because $\widehat{d}(\mu_X(F), \mu_X(F'))$ is always less or equal to $\top$. □

We obtain a monad lifting of $\mathcal{P}_{\mathrm{ne}}$ to $\mathsf{L}\mathbf{Spa}$ that we will denote by $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}$.

Given a monad lifting $\widehat{M}$, we can start to understand how it transforms distances using the presentation $\rho : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \cong M$. For any space $\mathbf{X}$, we see the distance $\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}$ on MX as a distance $\widehat{d}$ on terms modulo E via the isomorphism ρ_X:

$$\widehat{d}([s]_E, [t]_E) = \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(\rho_X[s]_E, \rho_X[t]_E).$$

Can we find some quantitative equations $\hat{E}$ that axiomatize $\widehat{d}$, i.e. such that $d_{\hat{E}}$ and $\widehat{d}$ are isomorphic (uniformly for all $\mathbf{X}$)?

First of all, for the distances to be isomorphic, they need to be on the same set, namely, we need to have $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv_E \cong \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv_{\hat{E}}$, or equivalently, $s \equiv_E t \iff s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t$. At once, this removes some options for which equations to add in $\hat{E}$. For instance, we cannot add $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ if $X \vdash s = t$ does not already belong to $\mathfrak{Th}(E)$. Conversely, if $X \vdash s = t \in E$, we need to ensure $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$ belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$. We can do this by adding $\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t$ to $\hat{E}$ thanks to Example 157.[263]

[263]

After that, we will have to add quantitative equations with some ε's to axiomatize $\widehat{d}$, but we have to be careful not to break the equivalence we just obtained between $\equiv_E$ and $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$. For instance, if $\mathbf{GMet} = \mathbf{Met}$, $\mathsf{f} : 1 \in \Sigma$ and $E = \emptyset$, then we cannot have $x =_{\frac{1}{2}} y \vdash \mathsf{f}x =_0 \mathsf{f}y \in \hat{E}$, because using the equation $x =_0 y \vdash x = y$ that defines $\mathbf{Met}$, we could conclude that $x =_{\frac{1}{2}} \vdash \mathsf{f}x = \mathsf{f}y$ belongs to $\mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, which means $\mathsf{f}x \equiv_{\hat{E}} \mathsf{f}y$ whenever $d_{\mathbf{X}}(x, y) \leq \frac{1}{2}$ while $\mathsf{f}x \not\equiv_E \mathsf{f}y$.

The relation between $\hat{E}$ and E seems to mimick our intution about mere liftings. We say that $\hat{E}$ extends E.

Definition 171 (Extension)**.** Given a set E of equations over Σ and a set $\hat{E}$ of quantitative equations over Σ, we say that $\hat{E}$ is an **extension** of E if for all $\mathbf{X} \in \mathbf{GMet}$ and $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$,

$$X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E) \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}). \tag{126}$$

It turns out that extensions are stronger than mere liftings because we can show the monad we constructed via terms modulo $\hat{E}$ is a monad lifting of $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$.

Proposition 172. *If $\hat{E}$ is an extension of E, then $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ is a monad lifting of $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$.*

Proof. We need to check the following three equations where $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is the forgetful functor:

$$U\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}} = \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}U \qquad U\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}} = \eta^{\Sigma,E}U \qquad U\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}} = \mu^{\Sigma,E}U.$$

First, we have to show that for any space $\mathbf{X}$, $U\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} = \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}U\mathbf{X}$. By definitions, the L.H.S. is $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and the R.H.S. is $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X/\equiv_E$, so it boils down to showing $s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t \iff s \equiv_E t$ for all $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. This readily follows from the definitions of $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$, $\equiv_E$ and (126):

$$s \equiv_{\hat{E}} t \iff \mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E}) \iff X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E) \iff s \equiv_E t.$$

Next, we have to show that $U\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}f = \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f$ for any $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$. This is done rather quickly by comparing their definitions, they make the same squares (20) and (99) commute now that we know $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and $\equiv_E$ coincide.

This takes care of the first equation, and the other two are done very similarly, we compare the definitions of $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ and $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ (resp. $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ and $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$) and conclude they are the same when $\equiv_{\hat{E}}$ and $\equiv_E$ coincide.[264] ☐

[264] We defined $\widehat{\eta}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ in (113), $\eta^{\Sigma,E}$ in Footnote 50, $\widehat{\mu}^{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ in (102), and $\mu^{\Sigma,E}$ in (30).

So if we are able to construct an extension $\hat{E}$ of E, we can obtain a monad lifting of M by passing through the isomorphism $\rho : \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} \cong M$.

Corollary 173. *If M is presented by (Σ, E), and $\hat{E}$ is an extension of E, then $\hat{E}$ presents a monad lifting of M.*

Proof. We first construct a monad lifting of (M, η, μ). For any space $\mathbf{X}$, we have an isomorphism $\rho_X^{-1} : MX \to \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}X$, and a generalized metric $d_{\hat{E}}$ on $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$ (since the underlying set of $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ is $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$ by Proposition 172). We can define a generalized metric $\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}$ on MX as we have done for Proposition 105 to guarantee that $\rho_X^{-1} : (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) \to \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X}$ is an isomorphism:[265]

$$\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(m, m') = d_{\hat{E}}(\rho_X^{-1}(m), \rho_X^{-1}(m')). \tag{127}$$

[265] In words, the distance between m and m' in MX is computed by viewing them as (equivalence classes of) terms in $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$, then using the distance between them given by $d_{\hat{E}}$.

This yields a mere lifting $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}}) \mapsto (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$.

In order to show this is a monad lifting, we use the following diagrams (quantified for all $\mathbf{X}$ and nonexpansive $f : \mathbf{X} \to \mathbf{Y}$) which hold because ρ is a monad isomorphism with inverse ρ^{-1}.[266]

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) & \xrightarrow{\rho_X^{-1}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle Mf}\downarrow & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f} \\ (MY, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{Y}}}) & \xleftarrow[\rho_Y]{} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{Y} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{X} & \xrightarrow{\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ & {\scriptstyle \eta_X}\searrow & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_X} \\ & & (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} (MMX, \widehat{\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}}) & \xrightarrow{\rho_{MX}^{-1}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}(X, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) & \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\rho_X^{-1}} & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \\ {\scriptstyle \mu_X}\downarrow & & & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mu_X^{\Sigma,E}} \\ (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}) & & \xleftarrow[\rho_X]{\qquad\qquad} & & \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \end{array}$$

[266] The first holds by naturality, the second by (47), and the third by (48). Moreover, all the functions in these diagrams are nonexpansive (with the sources and targets as drawn) by previous results:

- We just showed the components of ρ are isometries.
- We showed $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}f$ is the underlying function of $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,E}f$ because $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,E}$ is a monad lifting of $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$ (Proposition 172), so $\mathcal{T}_\Sigma Ef$ is nonexpansive when f is nonexpansive.
- By the previous two points, $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}\rho_X^{-1}$ is nonexpansive.
- Again since $\widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}$ is a monad lifting of $\mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E}$, $\eta_X^{\Sigma,E}$ and $\mu_X^{\Sigma,E}$ are nonexpansive.

These show (detailed in the footnote) that Mf, η_X and μ_X are compositions of nonexpansive maps, and hence are nonexpansive. We obtain a monad lifting $\widehat{M}$ of M to **GMet** which sends $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}})$ to $(MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$.

It remains to show that $\widehat{M}$ is presented by $(\Sigma, \hat{E})$. By construction, we have the isomorphisms $\widehat{\rho}_{\mathbf{X}} : \widehat{\mathcal{T}}_{\Sigma,\hat{E}}\mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$ whose underlying function is ρ_X. The fact that $\widehat{\rho}$ is a monad morphism follows from the facts that ρ is a monad morphism, and that $U : \mathbf{GMet} \to \mathbf{Set}$ is faithful so it reflects commutativity of diagrams.[267] ☐

[267] Let us detail the argument for naturality, the others would follow the same pattern. We need to show that $\widehat{\rho}_{\mathbf{Y}} \circ \widehat{M}f = \widehat{M}f \circ \widehat{\rho}_{\mathbf{X}}$. Applying U, we get $\rho_Y \circ Mf = Mf \circ \rho_X$ which is true because ρ is natural, hence $U(\widehat{\rho}_{\mathbf{Y}} \circ \widehat{M}f) = U(\widehat{M}f \circ \widehat{\rho}_{\mathbf{X}})$. Since U is faithful, and the desired equation holds.

Now, we would like to have a converse result. Namely, if $(X, d_{\mathbf{X}}) \mapsto (MX, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}})$ is given by a monad lifting $\widehat{M}$ of M to **GMet**, our goal is to construct an extension $\hat{E}$ of E such that the monad lifting corresponding to $\hat{E}$ (given in Corollary 173) is $\widehat{M}$. There is no obvious reason this is even possible, maybe $\widehat{M}$ is a monad lifting that has no quantitative algebraic presentation.[268] Our next theorem shows that such a $\hat{E}$ always exists. In fact, it is constructed very naively.

[268] Or maybe $\widehat{M}$ has a presentation that is not an extension of E, but our informal discussion leading to the definition of extensions indicates that is less probable.

As discussed in Footnote 263, when $\hat{E}$ contains all the quantitative equations in

$$\hat{E}_1 = \{\mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t \mid X \vdash s = t \in E\}, \tag{128}$$

then we have at least one direction of (126), namely, that $X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$ implies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$ for all $\mathbf{X}$ and $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$. Next, we include in $\hat{E}$ all the possible equations $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t$ where ε is the distance between s and t when viewed inside $\widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$ (via ρ_X), namely, $\hat{E}_2 \subseteq \hat{E}$ where

$$\hat{E}_2 = \left\{\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \mid \mathbf{X} \in \mathbf{GMet}, s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X, \varepsilon = \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(\rho_X[s]_E, \rho_X[t]_E)\right\}. \tag{129}$$

This is a very large bunch of equations (it is not even a set), but it leaves no stone unturned, meaning that the distance computed by $\hat{E}$ will always be smaller than the distance in $\widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$. Indeed, we have for any $m, m' \in MX$, letting $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ be such that $\rho_X[s]_E = m$ and $\rho_X[t]_E = m'$ (by surjectivity of ρ_X), we have[269]

$$\begin{aligned}\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(m, m') \leq \varepsilon &\implies \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})\\ &\iff d_{\hat{E}}([s]_E, [t]_E) \leq \varepsilon\\ &\iff d_{\hat{E}}(\rho_X^{-1}(m), \rho_X^{-1}(m')) \leq \varepsilon.\end{aligned}$$

[269] The implication follows because by definition, $\hat{E}$ will contain $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_{d_{\mathbf{X}}(m,m')} t$, hence by the MAX rule, we will have $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$. The first equivalence is (97), and the second holds because ρ_X^{-1} is the inverse of ρ_X.

In order to conclude that $\hat{E} = \hat{E}_1 \cup \hat{E}_2$ presents $\widehat{M}$, we need to show that $\hat{E}$ is an extension of E, i.e. the other direction of (126), and that the monad lifting defined in Corollary 173 coincides with $\widehat{M}$, i.e. the converse implication of the previous derivation holds. We will prove these by constructing a (family of) special algebra in $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E})$.[270]

[270] In turns out (after the rest of the proof) we are constructing the free algebra over $\mathbf{A}$, but we feel it is not necessary to make that explicit.

For any generalized metric space $\mathbf{A}$, we denote by $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{A}$ the quantitative Σ-algebra $(MA, [\![-]\!]_{\mu_A}, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{A}}})$, where

- $(MA, \widehat{d_{\mathbf{A}}})$ is the space obtained by applying $\widehat{M}$ to $\mathbf{A}$, and
- $(MA, [\![-]\!]_{\mu_A})$ is the Σ-algebra obtained by applying the isomorphism $\mathbf{Alg}(\Sigma, E) \cong \mathbf{EM}(M)$ (from the presentation) to the M-algebra (MA, μ_A) (from Example 55).

We can show that $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{A}$ belongs to $\mathbf{QAlg}(\Sigma, \hat{E}_1 \cup \hat{E}_2)$.

Lemma 174. *For all $\phi \in \hat{E}_1 \cup \hat{E}_2$, $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$.*

Proof. If $\phi = \mathbf{X}_\top \vdash s = t \in \hat{E}_1$, then by construction $(MA, [\![-]\!]_{\mu_A})$ satisfies $X \vdash s = t \in E$. This means that for any assignment $\hat{\iota} : \mathbf{X}_\top \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{A}$, we have $[\![s]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_{\mu_A} = [\![t]\!]^{\hat{\iota}}_{\mu_A}$.

Suppose now that $\phi = \mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \hat{E}_2$ with $\varepsilon = \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(\rho_X[s]_E, \rho_X[t]_E)$. A bit of unrolling[271] shows that for an assignment $\iota : X \to MA$, the interpretation $[\![-]\!]^\iota_{\mu_A}$ is the composite

[271] Look at the definition of P^{-1} in Proposition 56, in particular what we proved in Footnote 85, and the definition of $-\rho$ in (52).

$$\mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{\mathcal{T}_\Sigma \iota} \mathcal{T}_\Sigma MA \xrightarrow{[-]_E} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} MA \xrightarrow{\rho_{MA}} MMA \xrightarrow{\mu_A} MA.$$

For later use, we apply the naturality of $[-]_E$ (20) and ρ to rewrite the composite as

$$[\![-]\!]^\iota_{\mu_A} = \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X \xrightarrow{[-]_E} \mathcal{T}_{\Sigma,E} X \xrightarrow{\rho_X} MX \xrightarrow{M\iota} MMA \xrightarrow{\mu_A} MA. \tag{130}$$

We conclude that $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{A} \vDash \phi$ with the following derivation which holds for all nonexpansive $\hat{\imath} : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{A}$.[272]

$$\begin{aligned}
\widehat{d_{\mathbf{A}}}(\llbracket s \rrbracket^{\hat{\imath}}_{\mu_A}, \llbracket t \rrbracket^{\hat{\imath}}_{\mu_A}) &= \widehat{d_{\mathbf{A}}}\left(\mu_A(M\hat{\imath}(\rho_X[s]_E)), \mu_A(M\hat{\imath}(\rho_X[t]_E))\right) && \text{by (130)}\\
&\leq \widehat{\widehat{d_{\mathbf{A}}}}\left(M\hat{\imath}(\rho_X[s]_E), M\hat{\imath}(\rho_X[t]_E)\right) && \mu_A \text{ is nonexpansive}\\
&\leq \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}\left(\rho_X[s]_E, \rho_X[t]_E\right) && M\hat{\imath} \text{ is nonexpansive}\\
&= \varepsilon && \square
\end{aligned}$$

[272] Our hypothesis that $\widehat{M}$ is a monad lifting yields nonexpansiveness of μ_A and $M\hat{\imath}$.

Theorem 175. *Let $\widehat{M}$ be a monad lifting of M to* **GMet**, *and $\hat{E} = \hat{E}_1 \cup \hat{E}_2$. Then, $\hat{E}$ is an extension of E and it presents $\widehat{M}$.*

Proof. We already showed the forward implication of (126) when we defined $\hat{E}_1$ (128). For the converse, suppose that $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$, we saw in Lemma 174 that $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{X}$ satisfies $\mathbf{X} \vdash s = t$. Taking the assignment $\eta_X : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$ which is nonexpansive because $\widehat{M}$ is a monad lifting, we have $\llbracket s \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X} = \llbracket t \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X}$. Using (130) and the monad law $\mu_X \circ M\eta_X = \mathrm{id}_{MX}$ (left triangle in (38)), we find

$$\rho_X[s]_E = \mu_X(M\eta_X(\rho_X[s]_E)) = \llbracket s \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X} = \llbracket t \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X} = \mu_X(M\eta_X(\rho_X[t]_E)) = \rho_X[t]_E.$$

Finally, since ρ_X is a bijection, we have $[s]_E = [t]_E$, i.e. $X \vdash s = t \in \mathfrak{Th}(E)$.

We already showed that $\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(m, m') \geq d_{\hat{E}}(\rho_X^{-1}(m), \rho_X^{-1}(m'))$ when defining $\hat{E}_2$. For the converse, let $m = \rho_X[s]_E$ and $m' = \rho_X[t]_E$ for some $s, t \in \mathcal{T}_\Sigma X$ and suppose that $d_{\hat{E}}([s]_E, [t]_E) \leq \varepsilon$, or equivalently by (97), that $\mathbf{X} \vdash s =_\varepsilon t \in \mathfrak{QTh}(\hat{E})$. As above, Lemma 174 says that $\mathbb{M}\mathbf{X}$ satisfies that equation. Taking the assignment $\eta_X : \mathbf{X} \to \widehat{M}\mathbf{X}$ which is nonexpansive because $\widehat{M}$ is a monad lifting, we have[273]

$$\widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}(m, m') = \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}\left(\rho_X[s]_E, \rho_X[t]_E\right) = \widehat{d_{\mathbf{X}}}\left(\llbracket s \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X}, \llbracket t \rrbracket^{\eta_X}_{\mu_X}\right) \leq \varepsilon.$$

[273] The second inequality holds again by (130) and (38).

Comparing with (127), we conclude that $\widehat{M}$ is exactly the monad lifting from Corollary 173. In particular, $\hat{E}$ presents $\widehat{M}$ via $\widehat{\rho}$ whose component at $\mathbf{X}$ is ρ_X. $\square$

Remark 176. When constructing the extension $\hat{E} = \hat{E}_1 \cup \hat{E}_2$, $\hat{E}_1$ can be fairly small since it has the size of E, but $\hat{E}_2$ as defined is always huge (not even a set). In theory, some results in the literature could allow us to restrict the size of contexts to be of a moderate size only with mild size conditions on L and $E_{\mathbf{GMet}}$.[274] In practice, we will give a few examples where we can find some simple set of quantitative equations which will be equivalent to $\hat{E}_2$ (when $\hat{E}_1$ is present). For now, these always requires some *clever* argument that depends on the application, but there may be room for optimization in the definition of $\hat{E}_2$.

[274] I will not write the proofs because I am not confident enough with the literature on accessible and presentable categories, but I believe [FMS21, Propositions 3.8 and 3.9] make it possible to reproduce the arguments of **??** with a different cardinal replacing $\aleph_0$ (which we implicitly used because $\lambda < \aleph_0 \Leftrightarrow \lambda$ finite).

Bibliography

[Ada22] Jiri Adamek. Varieties of quantitative algebras and their monads. In *Proceedings of the 37th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science*, LICS '22, New York, NY, USA, 2022. Association for Computing Machinery.

[AHS06] Jirí Adámek, Horst Herrlich, and George E Strecker. Abstract and concrete categories; the joy of cats 2004. *Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories*, 17:1–507, 2006. Originally published by: John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1990.

[Awo10] Steve Awodey. *Category Theory*. Oxord University Press, 2010.

[Bar06] Michael Barr. Relational algebras. In *Reports of the Midwest Category Seminar IV*, pages 39–55. Springer, 2006.

[Bau19] Andrej Bauer. What is algebraic about algebraic effects and handlers?, 2019.

[BBKK18] Paolo Baldan, Filippo Bonchi, Henning Kerstan, and Barbara König. Coalgebraic behavioral metrics. *Log. Methods Comput. Sci.*, 14(3), 2018.

[BP98] Sergey Brin and Lawrence Page. The anatomy of a large-scale hypertextual web search engine. *Computer Networks and ISDN Systems*, 30(1):107–117, 1998. Proceedings of the Seventh International World Wide Web Conference.

[BW05] Michael Barr and Charles Wells. Toposes, triples and theories. *Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories*, 12:1–287, 2005. Originally published by: John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1990.

[CMS23] Christopher Conlon, Julie Holland Mortimer, and Paul Sarkis. Estimating preferences and substitution patterns from second-choice data alone. 2023. Working Paper, Accessed on: 2023-12-08.

[EE86] Paul Erdös and Marcel Erné. Clique numbers of graphs. *Discrete Mathematics*, 59(3):235–242, 1986.

[EGP07] Marcel Erné, Mai Gehrke, and Aleš Pultr. Complete congruences on topologies and down-set lattices. *Applied Categorical Structures*, 15(1):163–184, Apr 2007.

[EM65] Samuel Eilenberg and John C Moore. Adjoint functors and triples. *Illinois Journal of Mathematics*, 9(3):381–398, 1965.

[Fla97] R. C. Flagg. Quantales and continuity spaces. *algebra universalis*, 37(3):257–276, Jun 1997.

[FMS21] Chase Ford, Stefan Milius, and Lutz Schröder. Monads on categories of relational structures. July 2021.

[Fré06] Maurice Fréchet. Sur quelques points du calcul fonctionnel. *Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo*, 22:1–74, 1906.

[GPA21] Alexandre Goy, Daniela Petrişan, and Marc Aiguier. Powerset-like monads weakly distribute over themselves in toposes and compact hausdorff spaces. In Nikhil Bansal, Emanuela Merelli, and James Worrell, editors, *48th International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP 2021)*, volume 198 of *Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics (LIPIcs)*, page 132:1–132:14, Dagstuhl, Germany, 2021. Schloss Dagstuhl – Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik.

[GPR16] Mai Gehrke, Daniela Petrisan, and Luca Reggio. The schützenberger product for syntactic spaces. In Ioannis Chatzigiannakis, Michael Mitzenmacher, Yuval Rabani, and Davide Sangiorgi, editors, *43rd International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP 2016)*, volume 55 of *Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics (LIPIcs)*, page 112:1–112:14, Dagstuhl, Germany, 2016. Schloss Dagstuhl – Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik.

[Hau14] Felix Hausdorff. *Grundzüge der Mengenlehre.* 1914.

[HP07] Martin Hyland and John Power. The category theoretic understanding of universal algebra: Lawvere theories and monads. *Electronic Notes in Theoretical Computer Science*, 172:437–458, 2007. Computation, Meaning, and Logic: Articles dedicated to Gordon Plotkin.

[HPP06] Martin Hyland, Gordon Plotkin, and John Power. Combining effects: Sum and tensor. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 357(1):70–99, 2006. Clifford Lectures and the Mathematical Foundations of Programming Semantics.

[HR13] Dirk Hofmann and C.D. Reis. Probabilistic metric spaces as enriched categories. *Fuzzy Sets and Systems*, 210:1–21, 2013. Theme : Topology and Algebra.

[Law02] F William Lawvere. Metric spaces, generalized logic, and closed categories. *Reprints in Theory and Applications of Categories*, 1:1–37, 2002. Originally published in Rendiconti del seminario matématico e fisico di Milano, XLIII (1973).

[Lin66] F. E. J. Linton. Some aspects of equational categories. In S. Eilenberg, D. K. Harrison, S. MacLane, and H. Röhrl, editors, *Proceedings of the Conference on Categorical Algebra*, pages 84–94, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1966. Springer Berlin Heidelberg.

[Mat94] S. G. Matthews. Partial metric topology. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 728(1):183–197, 1994.

[Mém11] Facundo Mémoli. Gromov–wasserstein distances and the metric approach to object matching. *Foundations of Computational Mathematics*, 11(4):417–487, Aug 2011.

[MPP16] Radu Mardare, Prakash Panangaden, and Gordon D. Plotkin. Quantitative algebraic reasoning. In Martin Grohe, Eric Koskinen, and Natarajan Shankar, editors, *Proceedings of the 31st Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS '16, New York, NY, USA, July 5-8, 2016*, page 700–709. ACM, 2016.

[MPP17] Radu Mardare, Prakash Panangaden, and Gordon D. Plotkin. On the axiomatizability of quantitative algebras. In *32nd Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS 2017, Reykjavik, Iceland, June 20-23, 2017*, page 1–12. IEEE Computer Society, 2017.

[MSV22] Matteo Mio, Ralph Sarkis, and Valeria Vignudelli. Beyond nonexpansive operations in quantitative algebraic reasoning. In *Proceedings of the 37th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science*, LICS '22, New York, NY, USA, 2022. Association for Computing Machinery.

[MV20] Matteo Mio and Valeria Vignudelli. Monads and quantitative equational theories for nondeterminism and probability. In Igor Konnov and Laura Kovács, editors, *31st International Conference on Concurrency Theory, CONCUR 2020, September 1-4, 2020, Vienna, Austria (Virtual Conference)*, volume 171 of *LIPIcs*, pages 28:1–28:18. Schloss Dagstuhl - Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik, 2020.

[PP01] Gordon Plotkin and John Power. Adequacy for algebraic effects. In Furio Honsell and Marino Miculan, editors, *Foundations of Software Science and Computation Structures*, pages 1–24, Berlin, Heidelberg, 2001. Springer Berlin Heidelberg.

[PS21] Daniela Petrişan and Ralph Sarkis. Semialgebras and weak distributive laws. page 218–241, December 2021.

[Rie17] Emily Riehl. *Category Theory in Context*. Dover Publications, 2017.

[Vig23] Ignacio Viglizzo. Basic constructions in the categories of sets, sets with a binary relation on them, preorders, and posets, June 2023.

[Wec12] Wolfgang Wechler. *Universal algebra for computer scientists*, volume 25. Springer Science & Business Media, 2012.

[WS20] Paul Wild and Lutz Schröder. Characteristic Logics for Behavioural Metrics via Fuzzy Lax Extensions. In Igor Konnov and Laura Kovács, editors, *31st International Conference on Concurrency Theory (CONCUR 2020)*, volume 171 of *Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics (LIPIcs)*, pages 27:1–27:23, Dagstuhl, Germany, 2020. Schloss Dagstuhl – Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik.